

U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.

Form 10-K

February 26, 2014

[Table of Contents](#)

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 10-K**

þ ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT  
OF 1934

For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2013

OR

.. TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE  
ACT OF 1934

Commission file number 1-35416

**U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware  
(State or other jurisdiction of

26-3718801  
(I.R.S. Employer

Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Incorporation or Organization)

8490 Progress Drive, Suite 300

Identification No.)

Frederick, Maryland 21701

(Address of Principal Executive Offices) (Zip Code)

(301) 682-0600

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Securities Act:

Title of each class:  
Common Stock, par value \$0.01 per share

Name of each exchange on which registered:  
New York Stock Exchange

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Securities Act:

None

Indicate by a check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15 (d) of the Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its website, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of large accelerated filer, accelerated filer and smaller reporting company in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ☐  
Non-accelerated filer ☒

Accelerated filer ☐  
Smaller reporting company ☐

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of the outstanding common stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant as of June 28, 2013, the last business day of the registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, was \$735,673,841, based on the closing price of \$20.78 per share, as reported on the New York Stock Exchange.

As of February 21, 2014, 53,551,879 shares of the common stock of the registrant were issued and outstanding.

### DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Part III of Form 10-K	Certain sections of the Proxy Statement for the 2014 Annual Meeting of Shareholders for U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.
-----------------------	--

**Table of Contents**

U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.

FORM 10-K

For the Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2013

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
<b><u>PART I</u></b>	
Item 1. <u>Business</u>	3
Item 1A. <u>Risk Factors</u>	22
Item 1B. <u>Unresolved Staff Comments</u>	43
Item 2. <u>Properties</u>	43
Item 3. <u>Legal Proceedings</u>	54
Item 4. <u>Mine Safety Disclosures</u>	55
<b><u>PART II</u></b>	
Item 5. <u>Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</u>	56
Item 6. <u>Selected Financial Data</u>	60
Item 7. <u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	61
Item 7A. <u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>	79
Item 8. <u>Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</u>	81
Item 9. <u>Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</u>	124
Item 9A. <u>Controls and Procedures</u>	124
Item 9B. <u>Other Information</u>	126
<b><u>PART III</u></b>	
Item 10. <u>Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</u>	127
Item 11. <u>Executive Compensation</u>	127
Item 12. <u>Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</u>	127
Item 13. <u>Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</u>	127
Item 14. <u>Principal Accounting Fees and Services</u>	127
<b><u>PART IV</u></b>	
Item 15. <u>Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules</u>	128
<u>Signatures</u>	S-1

## **Table of Contents**

### **Forward-Looking Statements**

This Annual Report on Form 10-K contains forward-looking statements that are subject to risks and uncertainties. All statements other than statements of historical fact included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements give our current expectations and projections relating to our financial condition, results of operations, plans, objectives, future performance and business. You can identify forward-looking statements by the fact that they do not relate strictly to historical or current facts. These statements may include words such as anticipate, estimate, expect, project, plan, intend, believe, may, will, should, can have, likely and similar meaning in connection with any discussion of the timing or nature of future operating or financial performance or other events. For example, all statements we make relating to our estimated and projected costs, expenditures, cash flows, growth rates and financial results, our plans and objectives for future operations, growth or initiatives, strategies or the expected outcome or impact of pending or threatened litigation are forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements are subject to risks and uncertainties that may cause actual results to differ materially from those that we expected, including:

fluctuations in demand for commercial silica;

the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses;

operating risks that are beyond our control, such as changes in the price and availability of transportation, natural gas or electricity; unusual or unexpected geological formations or pressures; pit wall failures or rock falls; or unanticipated ground, grade or water conditions;

our dependence on three of our plants for a significant portion of our sales;

the level of activity in the natural gas and oil industries;

decreased demand for frac sand or the development of either effective alternative proppants or new processes to replace hydraulic fracturing;

federal, state and local legislative and regulatory initiatives relating to hydraulic fracturing and the potential for related regulatory action or litigation affecting our customers' operations;

our rights and ability to mine our properties and our renewal or receipt of the required permits and approvals from governmental authorities and other third parties;

our ability to implement our capacity expansion plans within our current timetable and budget and our ability to secure demand for our increased production capacity, and the actual operating costs once we have completed the capacity expansion;

our ability to succeed in competitive markets;

loss of, or reduction in, business from our largest customers;

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

increasing costs or a lack of dependability or availability of transportation services or infrastructure;

increases in the prices of, or interruptions in the supply of, natural gas and electricity, or any other energy sources;

increases in the price of diesel fuel;

diminished access to water;

our ability to effectively integrate the manufacture of resin-coated sand with our existing processes;

our ability to successfully complete acquisitions or integrate acquired businesses;

our ability to make capital expenditures to maintain, develop and increase our asset base and our ability to obtain needed capital or financing on satisfactory terms;

our substantial indebtedness and pension obligations;

restrictions imposed by our indebtedness on our current and future operations;

**Table of Contents**

the accuracy of our estimates of mineral reserves and resource deposits;

a shortage of skilled labor and rising costs in the mining industry;

our ability to attract and retain key personnel;

our ability to maintain satisfactory labor relations;

our reliance on trade secrets and contractual restrictions, rather than patents, to protect our proprietary rights;

our significant unfunded pension obligations and post-retirement health care liabilities;

our ability to maintain effective quality control systems at our mining, processing and production facilities;

seasonal and severe weather conditions;

fluctuations in our sales and results of operations due to seasonality and other factors;

interruptions or failures in our information technology systems;

the impact of a terrorist attack or armed conflict;

our failure to maintain adequate internal controls;

extensive and evolving environmental, mining, health and safety, licensing, reclamation and other regulation (and changes in their enforcement or interpretation);

silica-related health issues and corresponding litigation;

our ability to acquire, maintain or renew financial assurances related to the reclamation and restoration of mining property; and

other factors disclosed in Item 1A, "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

We derive many of our forward-looking statements from our operating budgets and forecasts, which are based on many detailed assumptions. While we believe that our assumptions are reasonable, we caution that it is very difficult to predict the impact of known factors, and it is impossible for us to anticipate all factors that could affect our actual results. Important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations, or cautionary statements, are disclosed under Item 1A, "Risk Factors" and Item 7, "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. All written and oral forward-looking statements

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

attributable to us, or persons acting on our behalf, are expressly qualified in their entirety by these cautionary statements as well as other cautionary statements that are made from time to time in our other filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the SEC ) and public communications. You should evaluate all forward-looking statements made in this Annual Report on Form 10-K in the context of these risks and uncertainties.

We caution you that the important factors referenced above may not contain all of the factors that are important to you. In addition, we cannot assure you that we will realize the results or developments we expect or anticipate or, even if substantially realized, that they will result in the consequences or affect us or our operations in the way we expect. The forward-looking statements included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K are made only as of the date hereof. We undertake no obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statement as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as otherwise required by law.



## **Table of Contents**

### **PART I.**

#### **ITEM 1. BUSINESS**

*Unless we state otherwise or the context otherwise requires, the terms we, us, our, U.S. Silica, the Company, our business, our company refer to U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries as a combined entity. Adjusted EBITDA as used herein is a non-GAAP measure. For a detailed description of Adjusted EBITDA, please see the discussion under Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations How We Evaluate Our Business Adjusted EBITDA.*

#### **Our Company**

##### ***Business Overview***

We are one of the largest domestic producers of commercial silica, a specialized mineral that is a critical input into a variety of attractive end markets. During our 113-year history, we have developed core competencies in mining, processing, logistics and materials science that enable us to produce and cost-effectively deliver over 250 products to customers across these markets. In our largest end market, oil and gas proppants, our frac sand is used to stimulate and maintain the flow of hydrocarbons in oil and natural gas wells. This segment of our business is experiencing rapid growth due to recent technological advances in the hydraulic fracturing process, which have made the extraction of large volumes of oil and natural gas from U.S. shale formations economically feasible. Our silica is also used as an economically irreplaceable raw material in a wide range of industrial applications, including glassmaking and chemical manufacturing. Additionally, in recent years a number of attractive new end markets have developed for our high-margin, performance silica products, including high-performance glass, specialty coatings, polymer additives and geothermal energy systems.

As of February 26, 2014, we operate 15 production facilities across the United States and control 297 million tons of reserves, including approximately 138 million tons of reserves that can be processed to meet the American Petroleum Institute ( API ) frac sand size specifications. We produce a wide range of frac sand sizes and are one of the few commercial silica producers capable of rail delivery of large quantities of API grade frac sand to most of the major U.S. shale basins. We believe that, due to a combination of these favorable attributes and robust drilling activity in the oil and natural gas industry, we have become a preferred commercial silica supplier to our customers in the oil and gas proppants end market and, consequently, have experienced high demand for our frac sand. To meet this demand, we continue to invest significant resources to increase our proppant production.

Our operations are organized into two segments based on end markets served: (1) Oil & Gas Proppants and (2) Industrial & Specialty Products. Our segments are complementary because our ability to sell to a wide range of customers across end markets allows us to maximize recovery rates in our mining operations, optimize our asset utilization and reduce the cyclical nature of our earnings. In 2013, we generated approximately \$546.0 million of sales, \$160.7 million of Adjusted EBITDA and \$75.3 million of net income. These figures represent increases of 24% and 7% and a decrease of 5%, respectively, compared to 2012.

##### ***Corporate History***

In August 2007, we were acquired by an affiliate of Harvest Partners, LLC. Soon thereafter, in October 2007, we were acquired by Hourglass Acquisition I, LLC, a direct, wholly owned subsidiary of Harbinger Capital Partners. In November 2008, Hourglass Acquisition I, LLC was acquired by U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc., formerly GGC USS Holdings, Inc., a wholly-owned subsidiary of GGC USS Holdings, LLC ( GGC Holdings ), an affiliate of Golden Gate Capital ( Golden Gate Capital ). The Company was formed by Golden Gate Capital as a Delaware corporation to effect the acquisition of Hourglass Acquisition I, LLC, and through that acquisition U.S. Silica Company, our principal operating subsidiary, became an indirect, wholly owned subsidiary of the Company.

## **Table of Contents**

On January 31, 2012, simultaneously with the initial public offering of our common stock, GGC Holdings, our sole stockholder prior to the IPO, contributed to us all of the stock of its wholly-owned subsidiary, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc., and its operating subsidiary, Coated Sand Solutions, LLC. Prior to this transaction, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. had a \$15.0 million note payable to GGC Holdings which, together with accrued interest of \$1.7 million, was converted to an equity contribution by GGC Holdings, simultaneously with the IPO. Coated Sand Solutions develops resin-coated sand proppants for sale into the oil and gas proppants market for use in the hydraulic fracturing process and into the foundry market.

As of December, 31, 2013, GGC USS Holdings, LLC held no interest in U.S. Silica after divesting its ownership interest in U.S. Silica during 2013.

### ***Our Strengths***

We attribute our success to the following strengths:

*Large-scale producer with a diverse and high-quality reserve base.* Our 15 geographically dispersed production facilities control 297 million tons of reserves, including API size frac sand and large quantities of silica with distinct characteristics, giving us the ability to sell over 250 products to over 1,800 customers. Our large-scale production and logistics capabilities and long reserve life make us a preferred commercial silica supplier to our customers. Our consistent, reliable supply of large quantities of silica gives our customers the security to customize their production processes around our commercial silica. Furthermore, our large scale provides us earnings diversification and a larger addressable market.

*Geographically advantaged footprint with intrinsic transportation advantages.* The strategic location of our facilities and our logistics capabilities enable us to enjoy high customer retention and a larger addressable market. In our Oil & Gas Proppants segment, our network of frac sand production facilities with access to on-site rail and the strategic locations of our transloads serve to create an addressable market that includes every major U.S. shale basin. We believe we are one of the few frac sand producers capable of delivering API grade frac sand cost-effectively to most of the major U.S. shale basins by on-site rail. Additionally, due to the high weight-to-value ratio of many silica products in our Industrial & Specialty Products segment, the proximity of our facilities to our customers' facilities often results in us being their sole supplier. This advantage has enabled us to enjoy strong customer retention in this segment, with our top five Industrial & Specialty Products segment customers purchasing from us for an average of over 50 years.

*Low-cost operating structure.* We believe the combination of the following factors contributes to our low-cost structure and our high margins:

our ownership of the vast majority of our reserves, resulting in mineral royalty rates that were less than 0.3% of our sales in 2013;

the close proximity of our mines to their respective processing plants, which allows for a cost-efficient and highly automated production process;

our processing expertise, which enables us to create over 250 products with unique characteristics while minimizing waste;

our integrated logistics management expertise and geographically advantaged facility network, which enables us to reliably ship products by the most cost-effective method available, whether by truck, rail or barge;

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

our large customer base across numerous end markets, which allows us to maximize our mining recovery rate and asset utilization; and

our large overall and plant-level operating scale.

## **Table of Contents**

*Strong reputation with our customers and the communities in which we operate.* We believe that we have built a strong reputation during our 113-year operating history. Our customers know us for our dependability and our high-quality, innovative products, as we have a long track record of timely delivery of our products according to customer specifications. We also have an extensive network of technical resources, including materials science and petroleum engineering expertise, which enables us to collaborate with our customers to develop new products and improve the performance of their existing applications. We are also well known in the communities in which we operate as a preferred employer and a responsible corporate citizen, which generally serves us well in hiring new employees and securing difficult to obtain permits for expansions and new facilities.

*Experienced management team.* The members of our senior management team bring significant experience to the dynamic environment in which we operate. Their expertise covers a range of disciplines, including industry-specific operating and technical knowledge as well as experience managing high-growth businesses. We believe we have assembled a flexible, creative and responsive team with a mentality that is particularly well suited to the rapidly evolving unconventional oil and natural gas drilling landscape, which is currently the principal driver of our growth.

### ***Our Strategy***

The key drivers of our growth strategy include:

*Expand our oil and gas proppant production capacity and product portfolio.* Beginning in the fourth quarter of 2011, we executed several initiatives to increase our frac sand production capacity and augment our proppant product portfolio. At our Ottawa, Illinois facility, we implemented operating improvements and installed a new dryer and six mineral separators to increase our annual frac sand production capacity by 900,000 tons. At our Rockwood, Michigan facility, we added 250,000 tons of annual frac sand production capacity by installing an entirely new processing circuit. In the first quarter of 2013, our new resin-coated sand facility became fully operational, with capacity to resin coat up to 400 million pounds of sand annually. In the second quarter of 2013, our Sparta, Wisconsin facility became fully operational with an annual raw sand production capacity of 1,700,000 tons. Also in 2013 we made an initial investment in a new Greenfield site near Utica, Illinois. When fully operational by the end of the second quarter of 2014. We expect to take ownership of the mine and plant and have them become fully operational by the end of the second quarter of 2014.

*Increase our presence in industrial and specialty products end markets.* We intend to increase our presence and market share in certain industrial and specialty products end markets that we believe are poised for growth. We will continue to work toward transforming our industrial and specialty product segment from a commodity business to a more value-driven approach by developing capabilities and products that assist in enabling us to increase our presence in larger, more profitable markets.

*Optimize product mix and further develop value-added capabilities to maximize margins.* We continue to actively manage our product mix at each of our plants to ensure we maximize our profit margins. This requires us to use our proprietary expertise in balancing key variables, such as mine geology, processing capacities, transportation availability, customer requirements and pricing. We expect to continue investing in ways to increase the value we provide to our customers by expanding our product offerings, increasing our transportation assets, improving our supply chain management, upgrading our information technology, and creating a world class customer service model.

*Expand our supply chain network and leverage our logistics capabilities to meet our customers' needs in each strategic oil and gas basin.* We continue to expand our transload network to ensure product is available to meet the growing in-basin needs of our customers. This approach allows us to provide strong customer service and puts us in a position to take advantage of opportunistic spot market sales. Our plant sites are strategically located to provide access to key Class I railroads, which enables us to cost effectively send product to each of the strategic basins in North America. We can ship product by

## **Table of Contents**

truck, barge and rail with an ability to connect to short-line railroads as necessary to meet our customers' evolving in-basin product needs. We believe that our supply chain network and logistics capabilities are a competitive advantage that enables us to provide superior service for our customers. For example, in 2013, we opened our San Antonio, Texas unit-train receiving transload facility, which was built in partnership with BNSF railroad to support the Eagle Ford market. Additionally, we have entered into an agreement with Union Pacific Railroad to build a second transload facility in Odessa, Texas, which is expected to be fully operational by the end of 2014. We will continue to make strategic investments and develop partnerships with transload operators and transportation providers that will enhance our portfolio of supply chain services that we can provide to customers. In 2013, we signed a multi-year agreement with Wildcat Minerals LLC ( "Wildcat" ) which provides us with potential sand storage and rail capacity at 19 of Wildcat's sand storage facilities, located near several major unconventional oil and gas shale basins. With the addition of these new sites, we now have in basin storage capacity at 35 transloads located near all of the major shale basins in the United States.

*Evaluate both Greenfield and Brownfield expansion opportunities and other acquisitions.* We will continue to leverage our reputation, processing capabilities and infrastructure to increase production, as well as explore other opportunities to expand our reserve base. We may accomplish this by developing Greenfield projects, where we can capitalize on our technical knowledge of geology, mining and processing and our strong reputation within local communities. For instance, we are evaluating the potential development of a Greenfield project in Eau Claire County, Wisconsin, which, depending on market conditions, could become operational as early as late 2015 and potentially add 3,000,000 tons of annual frac sand capacity. Additionally, we are continuing to actively pursue acquisitions to grow, taking advantage of our asset footprint, our management's experience with high-growth businesses, and our strong customer relationships. Our primary objective is to acquire assets complementary to our Oil & Gas Proppants segment, with a focus on mining, processing and logistics to further enhance our market presence, some of which assets have differing levels of frac sand quality. We prioritize acquisitions which provide opportunities to realize synergies (and, in some cases, the acquisition will only be accretive assuming synergies), including entering new geographic and frac sand product markets, acquiring attractive customer contracts, and improving operations. We are in active discussions to acquire assets fitting this strategy, which, if completed, would be significant under Regulation S-X and would require additional sources of financing. There can be no assurance that we reach a definitive agreement and complete any of these potential transactions. See the risk factors disclosed in Item 1A of Part I, including the risk factor entitled, "If we cannot successfully complete acquisitions or integrate acquired businesses, our growth may be limited and our financial condition may be adversely affected."

*Maintain financial strength and flexibility.* We intend to maintain financial strength and flexibility to enable us to pursue acquisitions and new growth opportunities as they arise. In July 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by replacing our revolving line-of-credit and amending our senior secured term loan facility (the "Term Loan"), increasing the Term Loan amount by \$115 million. As of December 31, 2013, we had \$78.3 million of cash on hand, \$75.0 million in short-term investments and \$41.0 million of availability under our new revolver.

## **Our Industry**

The commercial silica industry consists of businesses that are involved in the mining, processing and sale of commercial silica. Commercial silica, also referred to as silica, industrial sand and gravel, silica sand and quartz sand, is a term applied to sands and gravels containing a high percentage of silica (silicon dioxide, SiO<sub>2</sub>) in the form of quartz. Commercial silica deposits occur throughout the United States, but mines and processing facilities are typically located near end markets and in areas with access to transportation infrastructure. Other factors affecting the feasibility of commercial silica production include deposit composition, product quality specifications, land-use and environmental regulation, including permitting requirements, access to electricity, natural gas and water and a producer's expertise and know-how.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Market and Industry Data**

We obtained the industry, market and competitive position data used in this Annual Report on Form 10-K from our own internal estimates and research as well as from industry and general publications and research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties. We have relied upon publications of The Freedonia Group, Inc. ( Freedonia ) as our primary sources for third-party market and industry data. Industry publications, surveys and studies generally state that the information contained therein has been obtained from sources believed to be reliable, although they do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information. While we believe that each of these publications, surveys and studies is reliable, we have not independently verified market and industry data from third-party sources. While we believe our internal company research is reliable and the definitions of our market and industry are appropriate, neither such research nor these definitions have been verified by any independent source.

### ***Extraction and Production Processes***

Commercial silica deposits are formed from a variety of sedimentary processes and have distinct characteristics that range from hard sandstone rock to loose, unconsolidated dune sands. While the specific extraction method utilized depends primarily on the deposit composition, most silica is mined using conventional open-pit bench extraction methods and begins after clearing the deposit of any overlaying soil and organic matter. The silica deposit composition and chemical purity also dictate the processing methods and equipment utilized. For example, broken rock from a sandstone deposit may require one, two or three stages of crushing to liberate the silica grains required for most markets. Unconsolidated deposits may require little or no crushing, as silica grains are not tightly cemented together.

After extracting the ore, the silica is washed with water to remove fine impurities such as clay and organic particles. In some deposits, these fine contaminants or impurities are tightly bonded to the surface of the silica grain and require attrition scrubbing to be removed. Other deposits require the use of flotation to collect and separate contaminants from the silica. When these contaminants are weakly magnetic, special high intensity magnets may be utilized in the process to improve the purity of the final commercial silica product. After the silica has been washed, most output is dried prior to sale.

The final step in the production process involves the classification of commercial silica products according to their chemical purity, particle shape and particle size distribution. Generally, commercial silica is produced and sold in either whole grain (unground) form or ground form. Whole grain silica generally ranges from 12 to 140 mesh. Mesh refers to the number of openings per linear inch on a sizing screen. Whole grain silica products are sold in a range of shapes, sizes and purity levels to be used in a variety of industrial applications, such as glass, foundry, building products, oil and natural gas recovery, filtration and recreation. Some whole grain silica is further processed to ground silica of much smaller particle sizes, ranging from 5 to 250 microns. A micron is one-millionth of a meter.

### ***Product Distribution***

Most commercial silica is shipped in bulk to customers by truck or rail. There has been a shift away from truck to rail, as more volumes have been directed to the oil and gas proppants end market, which typically utilizes rail transportation.

For bulk commercial silica, transportation cost represents a significant portion of the overall product cost. Consequently, the majority of production transported by truck is sold within approximately 200 miles of the producing facility. This limitation emphasizes the importance of rail or barge access for low cost delivery outside of the 200-mile truck radius. As a result, facility location is one of the most important considerations for producers and customers. These factors dictate the all-in delivered cost of silica production. Exceptions to this include frac sands used in oil and natural gas recovery and finer grade commercial silica, where transporting the materials long distances is economically feasible due to the relatively high unit values.

## **Table of Contents**

In addition to bulk shipments, commercial silica products can be packaged and shipped in 50 to 100 pound bags or bulk super sacks. Bag shipments are usually made to smaller customers with batch operations, warehouse distributor locations or for ocean container shipments made overseas. The products that are shipped in bags are often higher value products, such as ground and fine ground industrial silica.

### ***Primary End Markets***

The special properties of commercial silica chemistry, purity, grain size, color, inertness, hardness and resistance to high temperatures make it critical to a variety of industries. Commercial silica is a key input in the well completion process, specifically, in the hydraulic fracturing techniques used in unconventional oil and natural gas wells. In the industrial and specialty products end markets, stringent quality requirements must be met when commercial silica is used as an ingredient to produce thousands of everyday products, including glass, building and foundry products and metal castings, as well as certain specialty applications such high-performance glass, specialty coatings, polymer additives and geothermal energy systems. Due to the unique properties of commercial silica, it is an economically irreplaceable raw material in a wide range of industrial applications. Our major end markets include:

#### ***Oil and Gas Proppants***

Commercial silica is used as a proppant by companies involved in oil and natural gas recovery in conventional and unconventional resource plays. Unconventional oil and natural gas production requires hydraulic fracturing and other well stimulation techniques to recover oil or natural gas that is trapped in the source rock and typically involves horizontal drilling. Frac sand is pumped down oil and natural gas wells at high pressures to prop open rock fissures in order to increase the flow rate of hydrocarbons from the wells. Additionally, every 4 to 5 years proppants may be used to re-fracture the reservoir and keep the fractures open. According to the most recent related Freedonia report dated August 2013, domestic proppant producers are expected to experience annual increases in demand of 11% through 2017. Based on our own internal and other third-party estimates, we believe commercial silica used by the oil and gas proppants end market increased significantly in 2011 and likely accounted for approximately 44% of total commercial silica volumes in the U.S.

#### ***Glass***

Commercial silica is a critical input into and accounts for 60% to 70% of the raw materials in glass production. The glassmaking markets served by commercial silica producers include containers, flat glass, specialty glass and fiberglass. Demand typically varies within each of these end markets. See Risk Factors Risks Related to Our Business Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

The container glass, flat glass and fiberglass end markets are generally mature end markets. Demand for container glass has historically grown in line with population growth, and we expect similar growth in the future. Flat glass and fiberglass tend to be correlated with construction and automotive production activity, both of which have been improving during the past couple of years. To the extent construction and domestic automotive production activity continues its recovery in the coming years, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect that demand in these end markets will continue to increase. Specific markets such as those for solar glass have been negatively impacted by generally weak demand. Some of the anticipated growth in the glass markets may be offset through the use of recycled glass. See Risk Factors Risks Related to Our Business Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

#### ***Building Products***

Commercial silica is used in the manufacturing of building products for commercial and residential construction. Whole grain commercial silica products are used in flooring compounds, mortars and grouts,

## **Table of Contents**

specialty cements, stucco and roofing shingles. Ground commercial silica products are used by building products manufacturers as functional extenders and to add durability and weathering properties to cementitious compounds. In addition, geothermal wells are an alternative energy source that requires specialized ground silica products in their well casings for effectiveness. The market for commercial silica used to manufacture building products is driven primarily by the demand in the construction markets. The historical trend for this market has been one of growth, especially in demand for cementitious compounds for new construction, renovation and repair. Although the housing construction market experienced a significant decline beginning in 2006 and continuing through 2011, we began to see an increase in permits and housing starts in 2012, gains that have continued during 2013. To the extent the housing market recovery continues in the coming years, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect that demand in this end market will increase. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Related to Our Business** Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

### *Foundry*

Commercial silica products are used in the production of molds for metal castings and in metal casting products. In addition, commercial whole grain silica is sold to coaters of foundry silica who then sell their product to foundries for cores and shell casting processes. The demand for foundry silica primarily depends on the rate of automobile and light truck production, construction and production of heavy equipment like rail cars. Over the past decade, there has been some movement of foundry supply chains to Mexico and other offshore production areas. In 2010, foundry demand decreased significantly as a result of the decrease in automotive and heavy equipment production. However, we began seeing increases in foundry demand in 2011 and throughout 2012. In 2013, the foundry market growth appears to have leveled off, with growth more in line with the general economy. To the extent production levels continue to strengthen in the coming years, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect foundry demand to continue to increase. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Related to Our Business** Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

### *Chemicals*

Both whole grain and ground silica products are used in the manufacturing of silicon-based chemicals, such as sodium silicate, that are used in a variety of applications, including food processing, detergent products, paper textile, specialty foundry applications and as inputs for some precipitated silicas. This end market is driven by the development of new products by the chemicals manufacturers, including specialty coatings and polymer additives as well as the growth of "green" tires. We expect this end market to grow as these manufacturers continue their product and applications development. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Related to Our Business** Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

### *Fillers and Extenders*

Commercial silica and kaolin clay products are sold to producers of paints and coating products for use as fillers and extenders in architectural, industrial and traffic paints and are sold to producers of rubber and plastic for use in the production of epoxy molding compounds and silicone rubber. The commercial silica products used in this end market are most often ground silica, including finer ground classifications. The market for fillers and extenders is driven by demand in the construction and automotive production industries as well as by demand for materials in the housing remodeling industry. Although construction, domestic automotive production and housing remodeling demand decreased in 2009, we have continued to see strengthening in these sectors throughout 2013. To the extent these industries continue to recover in the coming years, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect demand to improve. See **Risk Factors** **Risks Related to Our Business** Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.



## **Table of Contents**

### ***Demand Trends***

U. S. demand for industrial silica has been growing steadily. According to Freedonia , demand for industrial silica sand grew at a 4% compound annual growth rate ( CAGR ) from 2001 to 2011. This increase in demand was driven primarily by hydraulic fracturing, which grew at a 27% CAGR from 2001 to 2011, according to the most recent related Freedonia report dated October 2012. More recently, the recovery of the U.S. housing and automotive markets has also positively affected silica demand related to those markets such as glass, building materials, foundry and fillers and extenders. Trends driving the acceleration in demand include:

*Increased demand in the oil and gas proppants end market.* The increased demand for frac sand has been driven by the growth in the use of horizontal drilling and hydraulic fracturing as a means to extract hydrocarbons from unconventional resource plays. According to the most recent related Freedonia report dated August 2013, domestic proppant producers are expected to experience annual increases in demand of 11% through 2017. Also, we expect continued growth of horizontal drilling. The industry may experience temporary fluctuations in demand and price as the market adjusts to changing supply and demand due to energy pricing fluctuations. We significantly expanded our sales efforts to the frac sand market in 2008 and have since experienced rapid growth in our sales associated with our oil and gas activities.

*Rebound of demand in industrial end markets and continued growth in specialty end markets.* The economic downturn resulting from the financial crisis negatively impacted demand for our products in industrial and specialty products end markets, most notably in the glassmaking, building products, foundry and chemicals end markets. This drop coincided with a similar drop in key economic demand drivers, including housing starts, light vehicle sales, repair and remodel activity and industrial production. To the extent these demand drivers recover to historical levels, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect to see a corresponding increase in the demand for commercial silica. In addition, to the extent commercial silica products continue to be used in key markets, we anticipate continued volume growth in specialty end markets, such as high performance glass and geothermal energy systems as well as the increased use of commercial silica in new applications such as specialty coatings and polymer additives.

### ***Supply***

During 2013, the market increased supply to meet recent shortages and appears to be balanced, though shortages persist among certain coarse grades and certain surpluses have emerged in other grades. The year was also marked by the entry of multiple new players in the silica mining business, concentrated in Wisconsin and Minnesota. New entrants faced serious hurdles to establish their operations, including:

the difficulty of finding silica reserves suitable for use as frac sand, which, according to the API, must meet stringent technical specifications, including, among others, sphericity, grain size, crush resistance, acid solubility, purity and turbidity;

the difficulty of securing contiguous reserves of silica large enough to justify the capital investment required to develop a mine, processing plant, product storage and rail track;

a lack of industry-specific geological, exploration, development and mining knowledge and experience needed to enable the identification, acquisition and development of high-quality reserves;

the difficulty of identifying reserves with the above characteristics that either are located in close proximity to oil and natural gas reservoirs or have the rail access needed for low-cost transportation to major shale basins;

the difficulty of securing mining, production, water, air, refuse and other federal, state and local operating permits from the proper authorities, a process that can require up to three years; and

the difficulty of assembling a large, diverse portfolio of customers to optimize operations.

---

## **Table of Contents**

Many projects were abandoned, postponed or delayed due to these difficulties. The new entrants who were able to establish themselves often had high cost structures which resulted from these factors. See Risk Factors Risks Related to Our Business Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

### ***Pricing***

Historically, commercial silica has been characterized by regional markets created by the high weight-to-value ratio of silica. From 2000 to 2012, the increased demand for commercial silica from our customers in both the oil and gas proppants end market and industrial and specialty products end markets and limited supply increases resulted in favorable pricing trends in both of our operating segments. From 2001 to 2011, North America commercial silica prices increased at an average annual rate of 5.9%, according to the most recent related Freedonia report dated October 2012. In December 2012, the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics released a Frac Sand Producer Price Index, starting at 100, which measures the average change over time in the selling prices received by domestic producers of hydraulic fracturing sand. For December 2013, the preliminary Frac Sand Producer Price Index was 90.3, a decline of 9.7 points; however, the preliminary index for January 2014 was 92.3, an increase of 2.0 points from the prior month.

See Risk Factors Risks Related to Our Business Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.

### ***Our Products***

In order to serve a broad range of end markets, we produce and sell a variety of commercial silica products, including whole grain and ground products, as well as other industrial mineral products that we believe complement our commercial silica products.

*Whole Grain Silica Products* We sell whole grain commercial silica products in a range of shapes, sizes and purity levels. We sell whole grain silica that has a round shape and high crush strength to be used as frac sand in connection with oil and natural gas recovery, and we have constructed a production facility for resin-coated sand that became fully operational in 2013. We also sell whole grain silica products in a range of size distributions, grain shapes and chemical purity levels to our customers involved in the manufacturing of glass products, including a low-iron whole grain product sold to manufacturers of architectural and solar glass applications. In addition, we sell several grades of whole grain round silica to the foundry industry and provide whole grain commercial silica to the building products industry. Sales of whole grain commercial silica products accounted for approximately 85%, 82% and 78% of our total sales revenue for 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

*Ground Silica Products* Our ground commercial silica products are inherently inert, white and bright, with high purity. We market our ground silica in sizes ranging from 40 to 250 microns for use in plastics, rubber, polishes, cleansers, paints, glazes, textile fiberglass and precision castings. We also produce and market fine ground silica in sizes ranging from 5 to 40 microns for use in premium paints, specialty coatings, sealants, silicone rubber and epoxies. We believe we are currently the only commercial silica producer in the United States that manufactures a 5-micron product. Sales of ground silica products accounted for approximately 12%, 14% and 16% of our total sales revenue for 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

*Other Industrial Mineral Products* We also produce and sell certain other industrial mineral products, such as aplite, calcined kaolin clay and magnesium silicate. Aplitite is a mineral used to produce container glass and insulation fiberglass and is a source of alumina that has a low melting point and a low tendency to form defects in glass. Calcined kaolin clay is a mineral primarily used as a functional extender. Calcined kaolin clay is chemically inert, has a high covering power, gives desirable flow properties and reduces the amount of expensive pigments required. These characteristics make calcined kaolin clay an ideal functional extender in paints, plastics, specialty coatings and rubber. We also produce and sell a highly selective adsorbent made from a

## **Table of Contents**

mixture of silica and magnesium, used extensively in preparative and analytical chromatography. Sales of our other industrial mineral products accounted for approximately 3%, 4% and 6% of our total sales revenue for 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

### **Our Primary End Markets and Customers**

We sell our products to a variety of end markets. At the end of 2008, we began investing heavily in our capacity to supply frac sand to customers in the oil and gas proppants end market. Our high-quality reserves of frac sand have enabled us to quickly build a presence in this market, and we have invested in the production of resin-coated sand for the same purpose. Our customers in the oil and gas proppants end market include, among others, Schlumberger Ltd., Nabors Industries Ltd., Texas Specialty Sands, Calfrac, C&J Energy Services, Inc and Pioneer. Sales to the oil and gas proppants end market comprised approximately 64%, 55% and 36% of our total sales revenue in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

Our primary markets have historically been core industrial end markets with customers engaged in the production of glass, building products, foundry products, chemicals and fillers and extenders. Our diverse customer base drives high recovery rates across our production. We also benefit from strong and long-standing relationships with our customers in each of the industrial and specialty products end markets we serve. In our industrial and specialty products end markets, our customers include such industry leaders as Owens-Illinois, Inc., Owens Corning, Saint-Gobain Glass, The Sherwin-Williams Company and PPG Industries. Sales to our industrial and specialty products end markets comprised approximately 36%, 45% and 64% of our total sales revenue in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

We primarily sell our products under short term price agreements or at prevailing market rates. For a limited number of our customers, particularly in the oil and gas proppants end market, we sell under long-term, competitively-bid contracts. Sales under these long-term contracts collectively accounted for 40%, 31% and 17% of total company sales revenue in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Although these long-term contracts would provide us with some downside protection if there were to be a significant reduction in demand for frac sand, we believe that there is, and that there will continue to be, sufficient demand for frac sand such that we would not experience an adverse effect if these long-term contracts are not renewed or are canceled. Historically we have not entered into long-term contracts with our customers in the industrial and specialty products end markets because of the high cost to our customers of switching providers. We typically renegotiate our price agreements with these customers annually.

The following table provides more detail regarding the end markets that we serve and our significant customer relationships in those markets:

<b>End Market</b>	<b>Primary Customers</b>
Oil and Gas Proppants	Schlumberger Limited, Nabors Industries Ltd., Texas Specialty Sands, Calfrac, C&J Energy Services, Inc., Pioneer
Glass	PPG Industries, Owens-Illinois, Inc., Owens Corning, Saint-Gobain Glass
Building Products	Owens Corning, BASF Corporation, Johns Manville
Foundry	Porter Warner Industries, LLC, Thyssen Krupp Waupaca
Chemicals	PQ Corporation, Occidental Chemical Corporation
Fillers and Extenders	The Sherwin-Williams Company, Dow Corning Corporation

## **Table of Contents**

### **Production**

Our 15 production facilities are located primarily in the eastern half of the United States, with operations in Alabama, Illinois, Louisiana, Michigan, Missouri, New Jersey, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia, West Virginia and Wisconsin.

We conduct only surface mining operations and do not operate any underground mines. Mining methods at our facilities include conventional hard rock mining, hydraulic mining, surface or open-pit mining of loosely consolidated silica deposits and dredge mining. Hard rock mining involves drilling and blasting in order to break up sandstone into sizes suitable for transport to the processing facility by truck, slurry or conveyor. Hydraulic mining involves spraying high-pressure water to break up loosely consolidated sandstone at the mine face. Surface or open-pit mining involves using earthmoving equipment, such as bucket loaders, to gather silica deposits for processing. Lastly, dredging involves gathering silica deposits from mining ponds and transporting them by slurry pipelines for processing. We may also use slurry pipelines in our hydraulic and open-pit mining efforts to expedite processing. Silica mining and processing typically has less of an environmental impact than the mining and processing of other minerals, in part because it uses fewer chemicals.

Our processing plants are equipped to receive the mined sand, wash away impurities, eliminate oversized or undersized particles and remove moisture through a multi-stage drying process. Each of our facilities operates year-round, typically in shift schedules designed to optimize facility utilization in accordance with market demand. Our facilities receive regular preventative maintenance, and we make additional capital investments in our facilities as required to support customer volumes and internal performance goals. For more information related to our production facilities, see Item 2, **Properties**.

In connection with expanding our presence in the oil and gas proppants end market, we finalized construction of a facility to produce resin-coated sand for use in the hydraulic fracturing process, which became fully operational in the first quarter of 2013. In addition, we are constructing a mine and production facility in Utica, Illinois to produce raw sand for use in the hydraulic fracturing process, which we expect to be fully operational by the end of the second quarter of 2014.

### **Quality Control**

We maintain a standard of excellence through our ISO 9001-registered quality systems at our mining and processing facilities. We use automated process control systems that efficiently manage the majority of the mining and processing functions, and we monitor the quality and consistency of our products by conducting hourly tests throughout the production process to detect variances. We generally test each customer load prior to shipment, and all of our major facilities operate a testing laboratory to evaluate and ensure the quality of our products and services. We also provide customers with documentation verifying that all products shipped meet customer specifications. These quality assurance functions ensure that we deliver quality products to our customers and maintain customer trust and loyalty.

In addition, we have certain company-wide quality control mechanisms. We maintain a company-wide quality assurance database that facilitates easy access and analysis of product and process data from all plants. We also have fully staffed and equipped corporate laboratories that provide critical technical expertise, analytical testing resources and application development to promote product value and cost savings. The labs consist of different departments: a foundry lab, a paint and coatings lab, an analytical lab, a minerals-processing lab and an oil and gas lab. The foundry lab is fully equipped for analyzing foundry silica based on grain size distribution, acidity, acid demand value and turbidity, which is a measure of silica cleanliness. The paint and coatings lab provides formulation, application, and testing of paints, coatings and grouts for end use in fillers and extenders as well as building products. The analytical lab performs various analyses on products for quality control assessment. The minerals processing lab models plant production processes to test variations in deposits and improve our ability to meet customer requirements. The oil and gas lab performs testing and provides in-depth analysis of all types of hydraulic fracturing proppants, including frac sand, resin-coated and ceramic

## **Table of Contents**

fracturing proppants, to verify that they meet API size and crush specifications. Additionally, this lab is responsible for the development of new resin-coated products and the technical oversight of our Rochelle, Illinois facility.

### **Distribution**

We ship our commercial silica products direct to our customers by truck, rail or barge. Generally, we utilize trucks for shipments of 200 miles or less from our plant sites and to distribute our bagged products. Given the weight-to-value ratio of most of our products, the majority of our shipments outside this 200-mile radius are by rail. We frequently utilize rail-truck transfer stations to deliver our products to the oil and natural gas industry when this method of transportation provides us with lower delivery costs to specific customers or regions.

Our plant sites are strategically located to provide access to all Class I railroads which enables us to cost effectively send product to each of the strategic shale basins in North America. We can ship product by truck, barge and rail with an ability to connect to short-line railroads as necessary to meet our customers' evolving in-basin product needs.

We are continuously looking to increase the number of available transload points to which we have access. This approach allows us to provide strong customer service and puts us in a position to take advantage of opportunistic spot market sales. Through our storage facility in San Antonio, Texas, as well as our partnership with Wildcat, we now have storage capacity near all of the major shale basins in the United States. Additionally, we have entered into an agreement with Union Pacific Railroad to build a second storage facility in Odessa, Texas, which is expected to be fully operational by the end of 2014.

All three methods of shipping are typically performed with equipment owned by third parties. Both we and our customers lease a significant number of railcars for shipping purposes, as well as to facilitate the short-term storage of our products, particularly our frac sand products. The railcar leasing market is increasingly tight due to rising demand, and we expect to require additional rail cars as we continue to expand our commercial silica production. As of December 31, 2013, we had a leased fleet of 3,639 rail cars and are currently negotiating additional leases. We believe that we will have access to a sufficient supply of railcars to meet our needs.

For some of our high margin, finer ground commercial silica and other specialty products such as calcined kaolin clay, we can effectively distribute our products nationally and, in some cases, internationally. These sales are typically made through distributors and are shipped by rail to North American locations and by ocean-going barge to international locations.

### **Our Reserves**

We believe we have a broad and high quality mineral reserves base due to our strategically located mines and facilities. At December 31, 2013, we estimate that we had approximately 297 million tons of proven and probable recoverable mineral reserves. The quantity and nature of the mineral reserves at each of our properties are estimated by our internal geologists and mining engineers. Our internal geologists and engineers update our reserve estimates annually, making necessary adjustments for operations at each location during the year and additions or reductions due to property acquisitions and dispositions, quality adjustments and mine plan updates. Before acquiring new reserves, we perform surveying, drill core analysis and other tests to confirm the quantity and quality of the acquired reserves. In some instances, we acquire the mineral rights to reserves without actually taking ownership of the properties. For more information related to our production facilities, deposits and reserves, see Item 2, Properties.

### **Commercial Team**

Our commercial team consists of more than 60 individuals responsible for all aspects of our sales process, including pricing, marketing, transportation and logistics, product development and general customer service.

## **Table of Contents**

This necessitates a highly organized staff and extensive coordination between departments. For example, product development requires the collaboration of our sales team, our production facilities and our corporate laboratory. Our sales team interacts directly with our customers in determining their needs, our production facilities fulfill the orders and our corporate laboratory is responsible for ensuring that our products meet those needs.

Our commercial team can be divided into four units:

*Sales* Our sales team is organized by both region and end market. Domestically, we have an experienced group of regional sales managers underneath a national sales director, along with dedicated team members for the oil and gas proppants and the industrial and specialty end markets. Our oil and gas proppants team is lead out of our Houston office and is regionally positioned in the oil & gas markets across the U.S. This staff consists of experienced experts in the use of frac proppants in the oil & gas industry. Internationally, we opened our first office abroad in 2011 in Shanghai, China, through which we expect to establish key partnerships with local industry leaders and develop business opportunities across the Asia Pacific region. As we make decisions to enter or expand our presence in certain end markets or regions, we will continue to add dedicated team members to support that growth.

*Marketing* Our marketing team coordinates all of our new and existing customer outreach efforts. This includes producing exhibits for trade shows and exhibitions, manufacturing product overview materials, participating in regional industry meetings and other trade associations and managing our advertising efforts in trade journals.

*Transportation and Logistics* Our transportation and logistics team manages over 105,000 domestic and international shipments annually by directing inbound and outbound rail and truck traffic, supervising equipment maintenance, coordinating with rail carriers to ensure equipment availability, ensuring compliance with shipping regulations and strategically planning for future growth.

*Technical* Our technical team is anchored by our corporate laboratory in Berkeley Springs, West Virginia and our oil & gas laboratory in Houston, Texas. At these facilities, we perform a variety of analyses including:

analytical chemistry by X-Ray Fluorescence ( XRF ) and Inductively Coupled Plasma ( ICP ) spectroscopy;

particle characterization by sieve, SediGraph, Brunauer, Emmett and Teller ( BET ) surface area and microscopy;

ore evaluation by mineral processing, flotation and magnetic separation;

API frac sand evaluation, including crush resistance; and

American Foundry Society ( AFS ) green sand evaluation by various foundry sand tests.

Many other product analyses are performed locally at our 15 production facilities to support new product development, plant operations and customer quality requirements.

We also have a variety of other technical competencies including process engineering, equipment design, facility construction, maintenance excellence, environmental engineering, geology and mine planning and development. Effective integration of these capabilities has been a critical component of our business success and has allowed us to establish and maintain an extensive, high-quality silica sand reserve base, maximize the value of our reserves by producing and selling a wide range of high-quality products, optimize processing costs to provide strong value to customers and prioritize operating in a safe and environmentally sustainable manner.

*Customer Service* Our Customer Service team is dedicated to creating an exceptional customer experience and making it easy to do business with our company. The organization aims to accomplish this by consistently exceeding our customers' expectations, continually improving our performance, offering efficient and timely responses to customer needs, being available to our customers 24/7 and providing customers with personal points of contact on whom they can rely.



## **Table of Contents**

### **Competition**

Both of our reporting segments operate in highly competitive markets that are characterized by a small number of large, national producers and a larger number of small, regional or local producers. According to a January 2013 publication by the United States Geological Survey ( USGS ), in 2012, there were 87 producers of commercial silica with a combined 159 active operations in 33 states within the United States. Competition in the industry across both of our reporting segments is based on price, consistency and quality of product, site location, distribution capability, customer service, reliability of supply, breadth of product offering and technical support. As transportation costs are a significant portion of the total cost to customers of commercial silica in many instances transportation costs can represent more than 50% of delivered cost the commercial silica market is typically local, and competition from beyond the local area is limited. Notable exceptions to this are the frac sand and fillers and extenders markets, where certain product characteristics are not available in all deposits and not all plants have the requisite processing capabilities, necessitating that some products be shipped for extended distances.

Because the markets for our products are typically local, we also compete with smaller, regional or local producers. For instance, in recent years there has been an increase in the number of small producers servicing the frac sand market due to an increased demand for hydraulic fracturing services.

### **Intellectual Property**

Other than operating licenses for our mining and processing facilities, there are no third-party patents, licenses or franchises material to our business. Our intellectual property primarily consists of trade secrets, know-how and trademarks, including our name U.S. Silica and products such as OTTAWA WHITE. We strategically rely on trade secrets, rather than patents, to protect our proprietary processes, methods, documentation and other technologies, as well as certain other business information. Patent protection requires a costly and uncertain federal registration process that would place our confidential information in the public domain. Typically, we utilize trade secrets to protect the formulations and processes we use to manufacture our products and to safeguard our proprietary formulations and methods. We believe we can effectively protect our trade secrets indefinitely through the use of confidentiality agreements and other security measures.

### **Condition of Physical Assets and Insurance**

Our business is capital intensive and requires ongoing capital investment for the replacement, modernization and/or expansion of equipment and facilities. For more information, see Item 7, Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Liquidity and Capital Resources .

We maintain insurance policies against property loss and business interruption and insure against risks that are typical in the operation of our business, in amounts that we believe to be reasonable. Such insurance, however, contains exclusions and limitations on coverage, particularly with respect to environmental liability and political risk. There can be no assurance that claims would be paid under such insurance policies in connection with a particular event. See Item 1A, Risk Factors .

### **Employees**

As of December 31, 2013, we employed a workforce of 844 employees, the majority of whom are hourly wage plant workers living in the areas surrounding our mining facilities. The majority of our hourly employees are represented by labor unions that include the Teamsters, United Steelworkers, Paper Allied-Industrial Chemical & Energy, Glass/Molders/Pottery/Plastics and Laborers. We believe that we maintain good relations with our workers and their respective unions and have not experienced any material strikes or work stoppages since 1987.

## **Table of Contents**

Our employees average approximately 12 years of tenure with us, and we have an annual employee turnover rate of 11%. We believe this low turnover rate has directly contributed to improved process efficiencies and safety, which in turn help drive cost reductions. We believe our labor rates compare favorably to other mining and manufacturing facilities in the same geographic areas. We maintain workers' compensation coverage in amounts required by law and have no material claims pending. We also offer all full-time employees a competitive package of employee benefits, which includes medical, dental, life and disability coverage.

### **Seasonality**

Our business is affected to some extent by seasonal fluctuations in weather that impact our production levels and our customers' business needs. For example, in the second and third quarters, we sell more commercial silica to our customers in the building products and recreation end markets due to the seasonal rise in construction driven by more favorable weather conditions. Our sales and sometimes our production levels are lower in the first and fourth quarters due to lower market demand and due to our customers in these end markets experiencing slowdowns largely as a result of adverse weather conditions.

### **Regulation and Legislation**

#### ***Mining and Workplace Safety***

##### *Federal Regulation*

The U.S. Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) is the primary regulatory organization governing the commercial silica industry. Accordingly, MSHA regulates quarries, surface mines, underground mines and the industrial mineral processing facilities associated with quarries and mines. The mission of MSHA is to administer the provisions of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 and to enforce compliance with mandatory safety and health standards. MSHA works closely with the Industrial Minerals Association, a trade association in which we have a significant leadership role, in pursuing this mission. As part of MSHA's oversight, representatives perform at least two unannounced inspections annually for each above-ground facility. To date these inspections have not resulted in any citations for material violations of MSHA standards. For additional information regarding mining and workplace safety, including MSHA safety and health violations and assessments in 2013, see Item 4, Mine Safety Disclosures.

We also are subject to the requirements of the U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA) and comparable state statutes that regulate the protection of the health and safety of workers. In addition, the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard requires that information be maintained about hazardous materials used or produced in operations and that this information be provided to employees, state and local government authorities and the public. OSHA regulates the customers and users of commercial silica and provides detailed regulations requiring employers to protect employees from overexposure to silica bearing dust through the enforcement of permissible exposure limits and the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard.

##### *Internal Controls*

We adhere to a strict occupational health program aimed at controlling exposure to silica bearing dust, which includes dust sampling, a respiratory protection program, medical surveillance, training and other components. Our safety program is designed to ensure compliance with the standards of our Occupational Health and Safety Manual and MSHA regulations. For both health and safety issues, extensive training is provided to employees. We have safety committees at our plants made up of salaried and hourly employees. We perform annual internal health and safety audits and conduct annual crisis management drills to test our plants' abilities to respond to various situations. Health and safety programs are administered by our corporate health and safety department with the assistance of plant Environmental, Health and Safety Coordinators.

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Environmental Matters***

We and the commercial silica industry are subject to extensive governmental regulation on, among other things, matters such as permitting and licensing requirements, plant and wildlife protection, hazardous materials, air and water emissions and environmental contamination and reclamation. A variety of state, local and federal agencies enforce this regulation.

#### ***Federal Regulation***

At the federal level, we may be required to obtain permits under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers for the discharge of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States, including wetlands and streams, in connection with our operations. We also may be required to obtain permits under Section 402 of the Clean Water Act from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency ( EPA ) (or the relevant state environmental agency in states where the permit program has been delegated to the state) for discharges of pollutants into waters of the United States, including discharges of wastewater or stormwater runoff associated with construction activities. Failure to obtain these required permits or to comply with their terms could subject us to administrative, civil and criminal penalties as well as injunctive relief.

The U.S. Clean Air Act and comparable state laws regulate emissions of various air pollutants through air emissions permitting programs and the imposition of other requirements. These regulatory programs may require us to install expensive emissions abatement equipment, modify our operational practices and obtain permits for our existing operations, and before commencing construction on a new or modified source of air emissions, such laws may require us to reduce emissions at existing facilities. As a result, we may be required to incur increased capital and operating costs because of these regulations. We could be subject to administrative, civil and criminal penalties as well as injunctive relief for noncompliance with air permits or other requirements of the U.S. Clean Air Act and comparable state laws and regulations.

As part of our operations, we utilize or store petroleum products and other substances such as diesel fuel, lubricating oils and hydraulic fluid. We are subject to applicable requirements regarding the storage, use, transportation and disposal of these substances, including the relevant Spill Prevention, Control and Countermeasure requirements that the EPA imposes on us. Spills or releases may occur in the course of our operations, and we could incur substantial costs and liabilities as a result of such spills or releases, including those relating to claims for damage or injury to property and persons.

Additionally, some of our operations are located on properties that historically have been used in ways that resulted in the release of contaminants, including hazardous substances, into the environment, and we could be held liable for the remediation of such historical contamination. The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act ( CERCLA ), also known as the Superfund law, and comparable state laws impose joint and several liability, without regard to fault or legality of conduct, on classes of persons who are considered to be responsible for the release of hazardous substances into the environment. These persons include the owner or operator of the site where the release occurred and anyone who disposed or arranged for the disposal of a hazardous substance released at the site. Under CERCLA, such persons may be subject to liability for the costs of cleaning up the hazardous substances, for damages to natural resources, and for the costs of certain health studies. In addition, it is not uncommon for neighboring landowners and other third parties to file claims for personal injury and property damage allegedly caused by the hazardous substances released into the environment.

In addition, the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act ( RCRA ) and comparable state statutes regulate the generation, transportation, treatment, storage, disposal and cleanup of hazardous and non-hazardous wastes. Under the auspices of the EPA, the individual states administer some or all of the provisions of RCRA, sometimes in conjunction with their own, more stringent requirements. In the course of our operations, we generate industrial solid wastes that may be regulated as hazardous wastes.

## **Table of Contents**

Our operations may also be subject to broad environmental review under the National Environmental Policy Act ( NEPA ). NEPA requires federal agencies to evaluate the environmental impact of all major federal actions significantly affecting the quality of the human environment. The granting of a federal permit for a major development project, such as a mining operation, may be considered a major federal action that requires review under NEPA. Therefore, our projects may require review and evaluation under NEPA. As part of this evaluation, the federal agency considers a broad array of environmental impacts, including, among other things, impacts on air quality, water quality, wildlife (including threatened and endangered species), historical and archeological resources, geology, socioeconomics and aesthetics. NEPA also requires the consideration of alternatives to the project. The NEPA review process, especially the preparation of a full environmental impact statement, can be time consuming and expensive. The purpose of the NEPA review process is to inform federal agencies decision-making on whether federal approval should be granted for a project and to provide the public with an opportunity to comment on the environmental impacts of a proposed project. While NEPA requires only that an environmental evaluation be conducted and does not mandate a result, a federal agency could decide to deny a permit, or impose certain conditions on its approval, based on its environmental review under NEPA, or a third party may challenge the adequacy of a NEPA review.

Federal agencies granting permits for our operations also must consider impacts to endangered and threatened species and their habitat under the Endangered Species Act. We also must comply with and are subject to liability under the Endangered Species Act, which prohibits and imposes stringent penalties for the harming of endangered or threatened species and their habitat. Federal agencies also must consider a project s impacts on historic or archeological resources under the National Historic Preservation Act, and we may be required to conduct archeological surveys of project sites and to avoid or preserve historical areas or artifacts.

### *State and Local Regulation*

Because our operations are located in numerous states, we are also subject to a variety of different state and local environmental review and permitting requirements. Some states in which our projects are located or are being developed have state laws similar to NEPA; thus our development of new sites or the expansion of existing sites may be subject to comprehensive state environmental reviews even if they are not subject to NEPA. In some cases, the state environmental review may be more stringent than the federal review. Our operations may require state law based permits in addition to federal permits, requiring state agencies to consider a range of issues, many the same as federal agencies, including, among other things, a project s impact on wildlife and their habitats, historic and archaeological sites, aesthetics, agricultural operations and scenic areas. Some states also have specific permitting and review processes for commercial silica mining operations, and states may impose different or additional monitoring or mitigation requirements than federal agencies. The development of new sites and our existing operations also are subject to a variety of local environmental and regulatory requirements, including land use, zoning, building and transportation requirements.

As demand for frac sand in the oil and natural gas industry has driven a significant increase in current and expected future production of commercial silica, some local communities have expressed concern regarding silica sand mining operations. These concerns have generally included exposure to ambient silica sand dust, truck traffic, water usage and blasting. In response, certain state and local communities have developed or are in the process of developing regulations or zoning restrictions intended to minimize dust from getting airborne, control the flow of truck traffic, significantly curtail the amount of practicable area for mining activities, provide compensation to local residents for potential impacts of mining activities and, in some cases, ban issuance of new permits for mining activities. To date, we have not experienced any material impact or disruption to our existing mining operations or planned capacity expansions as a result of these types of concerns.

We have a long history of positive engagement with the communities that surround our existing mining operations. We have 11% employee turnover and have had no significant strikes in more than 26 years, evidence of the strong relationship we have with our employees. We believe this strong relationship helps foster good relations with the communities in which we operate. Although additional regulatory requirements could

## **Table of Contents**

negatively impact our business, financial condition and results of operations, we believe our existing operations are less likely to be negatively impacted by virtue of our good community relations.

Planned expansion of our mining and production capacity in new communities could be more significantly impacted by increased regulatory activity. Difficulty or delays in obtaining or inability to obtain new mining permits or increased costs of compliance with future state and local regulatory requirements could have a material negative impact on our ability to grow our business. In an effort to minimize these risks, we continue to be engaged with local communities in order to grow and maintain strong relationships with residents and regulators.

### *Costs of Compliance*

We may incur significant costs and liabilities as a result of environmental, health and safety requirements applicable to our activities. Failure to comply with environmental laws and regulations may result in the assessment of administrative, civil and criminal penalties, imposition of investigatory, cleanup and site restoration costs and liens, the denial or revocation of permits or other authorizations and the issuance of injunctions to limit or cease operations. Compliance with these laws and regulations may also increase the cost of the development, construction and operation of our projects and may prevent or delay the commencement or continuance of a given project. In addition, claims for damages to persons or property may result from environmental and other impacts of our activities.

The process for performing environmental impact studies and reviews for federal, state and local permits for our operations involves a significant investment of time and monetary resources. We cannot control the permit approval process. We cannot predict whether all permits required for a given project will be granted or whether such permits will be the subject of significant opposition. The denial of a permit essential to a project or the imposition of conditions with which it is not practicable or feasible to comply could impair or prevent our ability to develop a project. Significant opposition and delay in the environmental review and permitting process also could impair or delay our ability to develop a project. Additionally, the passage of more stringent environmental laws could impair our ability to develop new operations and have an adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

### **Availability of Reports; Website Access; Other Information**

Our internet address is <http://www.ussilica.com>. Through Investor Relations SEC Filings on our home page, we make available free of charge our Annual Report on Form 10-K, our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, our proxy statements, our current reports on Form 8-K, SEC Forms 3, 4 and 5 and any amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Sections 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. Our reports filed with the SEC are also made available to read and copy at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information about the Public Reference Room by contacting the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Reports filed with the SEC are also made available on its website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

### **Executive Officers of the Registrant**

**John P. Blanchard**, age 40, has served as our Vice President and General Manager, Industrial and Specialty Products since September 2011. Mr. Blanchard possesses over 17 years' experience in a variety of industries, including nonwovens, composites, building materials and pharmaceuticals. Prior to joining us, Mr. Blanchard held various positions of increasing responsibility with Johns Manville from 2005 to September 2011, including Global Business Director from December 2010 to September 2011 and Global Business Manager from February 2008 to December 2010. Mr. Blanchard earned a B.S. in Chemical Engineering from Michigan Technological University and an M.B.A. from the University of Michigan.

## **Table of Contents**

**Bradford B. Casper**, age 39, has served as our Vice President of Strategic Planning since May 2011. Before joining us, Mr. Casper was at Bain & Company, Inc., where he held various positions from 2002 to May 2011 in the United States, Australia and Hong Kong, most recently serving as a Principal from July 2010 to May 2011. Mr. Casper earned a B.S. in Accounting from the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign and an M.B.A. from the Wharton School at the University of Pennsylvania.

**Christine C. Marshall**, age 52, has served as our General Counsel and Corporate Secretary since November 2012. Prior to joining us, Ms. Marshall served as Vice President and General Counsel of the Security Technologies Sector of Ingersoll Rand Company from September 2010 to January 2012. From 2005 to 2010, Ms. Marshall held various positions of increasing responsibility with Tyco International, including General Counsel of Tyco Flow Control Americas from January 2008 to May 2010. Ms. Marshall earned a B.A. degree from Harvard University and a J.D. degree from Georgetown University Law Center.

**Donald A. Merrill**, age 49, has served as our Vice President and Chief Financial Officer since January 2013 and served as our Vice President of Finance from October 2012 until his appointment as Chief Financial Officer. Previously, Mr. Merrill had served as Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Myers Industries Inc. from January 2006 through August 2012. Prior to serving at Myers Industries, Mr. Merrill held the role of Vice President and Chief Financial Officer, Rubbermaid Home Products Division at Newell Rubbermaid Inc. from 2003 through 2005. Mr. Merrill has a B.S. in Accounting from Miami University.

**David D. Murry**, age 52, has served as our Vice President of Talent Management and Chief Human Resources Officer since October 2011. Prior to joining us, Mr. Murry was the Director of Human Resources and Talent Management for Arkema, a diversified chemicals company, from October 2005 to October 2011. He has held positions of increasing leadership with Armstrong, Dell, and Alcoa. Mr. Murry oversees our Human Resources, Occupational Health, and Safety team members in the corporate office as well as at all of our operating facilities. Mr. Murry earned a B.S. in Mining Engineering from Texas A&M University and a Master's of Science in Management from Antioch University.

**Bryan A. Shinn**, age 52, has served as our President since March 2011 and as our Chief Executive Officer and a member of our Board of Directors (the "Board") since January 10, 2012. Prior to assuming this position, Mr. Shinn was our Senior Vice President of Sales and Marketing from October 2009 to February 2011. Before joining us, Mr. Shinn was employed by the E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company from 1983 to September 2009, where he held a variety of key leadership roles in operations, sales, marketing and business management, including Global Business Director and Global Sales Director. Mr. Shinn earned a B.S. in Mechanical Engineering from the University of Delaware. As a result of these and other professional experiences, Mr. Shinn possesses particular knowledge and experience in operations, sales, marketing, management and corporate strategy that strengthen the Board's collective qualifications, skills and experience.

**Jason L. Tedrow**, age 39, has served as our Vice President of Supply Chain since January 2012. Before joining us, Mr. Tedrow was with Lafarge Cement where he held various distribution and supply chain management roles of increasing responsibility from 2006 through January 2012, most recently serving as the Director of Distribution for Lafarge's River Business Unit from July 2011 to January 2012. Mr. Tedrow also held various engineering and supply chain management positions with ConAgra Foods from 2000 to January 2006 and The Amway Corporation from 1998 to August 2000. Mr. Tedrow earned a B.S. in Industrial Engineering from Western Michigan University and an M.B.A. from the University of Chicago, Booth School of Business.

**Don Weinheimer**, age 55, has served as our Vice President and General Manager, Oil & Gas since July 2012. Before joining us, Mr. Weinheimer had served in various executive positions with Key Energy Services since October 2006 including as Senior Vice President, Strategy, Markets and Technology; Senior Vice President of Business Development, Technology and Strategic Planning; Senior Vice President of Product Development, Strategic Planning and Quality; and Senior Vice President, Production Services. Prior to joining Key Energy Services, Mr. Weinheimer held various positions of increasing responsibility with Halliburton Company, a global

## **Table of Contents**

energy services company, since 1981 including as Vice President of Technology Globalization within its Energy Services Group from July 2006 to October 2006 and as Vice President of Innovation and Marketing in its Production Optimization Division from July 2004 to June 2006. Mr. Weinheimer has over 31 years of industry experience, including international operational and business development experience in both the Middle East and Algeria. Mr. Weinheimer earned his B.S. in Agricultural Engineering from Texas A&M University.

**Michael L. Winkler**, age 49, has served as our Vice President and Chief Operating Officer since December 2013. He served as our Vice President of Operations from June 2011 until December 2013. Before joining us, Mr. Winkler was Vice President of Operations for Campbell Soup Company from August 2007 to June 2011 and held various positions with Mars Inc. from 1996 to August 2007, including Plant Manager Columbus Plant and Director of Industrial Engineering. Mr. Winkler earned a B.S. in Industrial Engineering from the University of Wisconsin Platteville and an M.B.A. from the University of North Texas.

**Adam S. Yoxtheimer**, age 34, joined U.S. Silica in September 2013 as our Vice President and Chief Administrative Officer. Prior to joining us, Mr. Yoxtheimer served as a Principal for Booz & Company in the Energy, Chemical and Utilities practice from May 2007 until September 2013. From 2004 until 2006, Mr. Yoxtheimer held a senior engineering position in the Information Systems & Global Solutions division of Lockheed Martin Corporation. He began his career as a systems engineer at BAE Systems based in Washington, D.C. Mr. Yoxtheimer holds a bachelor's degree from Princeton University, a master's degree from University of Virginia and an MBA from the Darden Graduate School of Business at the University of Virginia.

## **ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS**

*Our operations and financial results are subject to various risks and uncertainties, including those described below and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. You should carefully consider the risk factors set forth below as well as the other information contained in this Annual Report on Form 10-K in connection with evaluating us. Additional risks and uncertainties not currently known to us or that we currently deem to be immaterial may also materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations or financial condition. Certain statements in Risk Factors are forward-looking statements.*

### **Risks Related to Our Business**

***The demand for commercial silica fluctuates, which could adversely affect our results of operations.***

Demand in the end markets served by our customers is influenced by many factors, including the following:

global and regional economic, political and military events and conditions;

fluctuations in energy, fuel, oil and natural gas prices and the availability of such fuels;

demand for oil, natural gas and petroleum products;

changes in residential and commercial construction demands, driven in part by fluctuating interest rates and demographic shifts;

demand for automobiles and other vehicles;

the substitution of plastic or other materials for glass;

the use of recycled glass in glass production

competition from offshore producers of glass products;

changes in demand for our products due to technological innovations;

changes in laws and regulations (or the interpretation thereof) related to the mining and hydraulic fracturing industries, silica dust exposure or the environment;

prices, availability and other factors relating to our products;



## **Table of Contents**

increases in costs of labor and labor strikes; and

population growth rates.

We cannot predict or control the factors that affect demand for our products. Negative developments in the above factors, among others, could cause the demand for commercial silica or other minerals to decline, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects.

***Our operations are subject to the cyclical nature of our customers' businesses, and we may not be able to mitigate that risk.***

The substantial majority of our sales are to customers in industries that have historically been cyclical, such as glassmaking, building products, foundry and oil and natural gas recovery. During periods of economic slowdown, our customers often reduce their production rates and also reduce capital expenditures and defer or cancel pending projects. Such developments occur even among customers that are not experiencing financial difficulties.

Demand in many of the end markets for commercial silica is driven by the construction and automotive industries. For example, the flat glass market depends on the automotive and commercial and residential construction and remodeling markets. The market for commercial silica used to manufacture building products is driven primarily by demand in the construction markets. The demand for foundry silica depends on the rate of automobile, light truck and heavy equipment production as well as construction. In the automotive industry, North American car and truck production was up 4% in 2013 after being up 17% in 2012, but remains below pre-recession levels. Housing starts in 2013 were approximately 923,400 units, an 18% improvement over 2012 but still only a fraction of the peak rate of 2.1 million units in 2005. The demand for frac sand is driven by demand for oil and natural gas. In periods of lower economic productivity or recession, oil and natural gas prices tend to decrease, as they did during late 2008 and portions of 2009, which, in turn, causes exploration and production companies to reduce their exploration, development, production and well completion activities. The reduced level of such activities could result in a corresponding decline in the demand for frac sand. In addition, given that silica transportation represents one of our customers' largest costs, if, in response to economic pressures, our customers choose to move their production offshore, the increased logistics costs could reduce demand for our products. Continued weakness in the industries we serve has had, and may in the future have, an adverse effect on sales of our products and our results of operations. A continued or renewed economic downturn in one or more of the industries or geographic regions that we serve, or in the worldwide economy, could cause actual results of operations to differ materially from historical and expected results.

***Our operations are subject to operating risks that are often beyond our control and could adversely affect production levels and costs, and such risks may not be covered by insurance.***

Our mining, processing and production facilities are subject to risks normally encountered in the commercial silica industry. These risks include:

changes in the price and availability of transportation;

changes in the price and availability of natural gas or electricity;

unusual or unexpected geological formations or pressures;

pit wall failures or rock falls;

unanticipated ground, grade or water conditions;

inclement or hazardous weather conditions, including flooding, and the physical impacts of climate change;

environmental hazards;

## **Table of Contents**

industrial accidents;

changes in laws and regulations (or the interpretation thereof) related to the mining and hydraulic fracturing industries, silica dust exposure or the environment;

inability to acquire or maintain necessary permits or mining or water rights;

restrictions on blasting operations;

inability to obtain necessary production equipment or replacement parts;

reduction in the amount of water available for processing;

technical difficulties or failures;

labor disputes;

late delivery of supplies;

fires, explosions or other accidents; and

facility shutdowns in response to environmental regulatory actions.

Any of these risks could result in damage to, or destruction of, our mining properties or production facilities, personal injury, environmental damage, delays in mining or processing, losses or possible legal liability. Any prolonged downtime or shutdowns at our mining properties or production facilities could have a material adverse effect on us.

Not all of these risks are reasonably insurable, and our insurance coverage contains limits, deductibles, exclusions and endorsements. Our insurance coverage may not be sufficient to meet our needs in the event of loss and any such loss may have a material adverse effect on us.

***A significant portion of our sales is generated at three of our plants. Any adverse developments at any of those plants or in the end markets those plants serve could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.***

A significant portion of our sales are generated at our plants located in Ottawa, Illinois, Mill Creek, Oklahoma, and Sparta, Wisconsin. These plants represented a combined 63%, 58% and 52% of our total sales volume in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Any adverse development at these plants or in the end markets these plants serve, including adverse developments due to catastrophic events or weather, decreased demand for commercial silica products, a decrease in the availability of transportation services or adverse developments affecting our customers, could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

***Our business and financial performance depend on the level of activity in the oil and natural gas industries.***

Our operations that produce frac sand are materially dependent on the levels of activity in natural gas and oil exploration, development and production. More specifically, the demand for the frac sand we produce is closely related to the number of natural gas and oil wells completed in geological formations where sand-based proppants are used in fracture treatments. These activity levels are affected by both short- and long-term

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

trends in natural gas and oil prices. In recent years, natural gas and oil prices and, therefore, the level of exploration, development and production activity, have experienced significant fluctuations. Worldwide economic, political and military events, including war, terrorist activity, events in the Middle East and initiatives by the Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries ( OPEC ), have contributed, and are likely to continue to contribute, to price volatility. Additionally, warmer than normal winters in North America and other weather patterns may adversely impact the short-term demand for natural gas and, therefore, demand for our products. Reduction in demand for natural gas to generate electricity could also adversely impact the demand for frac sand. A prolonged

## **Table of Contents**

reduction in natural gas and oil prices would generally depress the level of natural gas and oil exploration, development, production and well completion activity and result in a corresponding decline in the demand for the frac sand we produce. Such a decline could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition. In addition, any future decreases in the rate at which oil and natural gas reserves are discovered or developed, whether due to increased governmental regulation, limitations on exploration and drilling activity or other factors, could have a material adverse effect on our business, even in a stronger natural gas and oil price environment.

***We may be adversely affected by decreased demand for frac sand or the development of either effective alternative proppants or new processes to replace hydraulic fracturing.***

Frac sand is a proppant used in the completion and re-completion of natural gas and oil wells through hydraulic fracturing. Frac sand is the most commonly used proppant and is less expensive than ceramic proppant, which is also used in hydraulic fracturing to stimulate and maintain oil and natural gas production. A significant shift in demand from frac sand to other proppants, such as ceramic proppants, could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations. The development and use of other effective alternative proppants, or the development of new processes to replace hydraulic fracturing altogether, could also cause a decline in demand for the frac sand we produce and could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

***Federal, state and local legislative and regulatory initiatives relating to hydraulic fracturing and the potential for related regulatory action or litigation could result in increased costs and additional operating restrictions or delays for our customers, which could negatively impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.***

A significant portion of our business supplies frac sand to hydraulic fracturing operators in the oil and natural gas industry. Although we do not directly engage in hydraulic fracturing activities, our customers purchase our frac sand for use in their hydraulic fracturing operations. Increased regulation of hydraulic fracturing may adversely impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The federal Safe Drinking Water Act (the "SDWA") regulates the underground injection of substances through the Underground Injection Control Program (the "UIC Program"). Hydraulic fracturing generally has been exempt from federal regulation under the UIC Program, and the hydraulic fracturing process has been typically regulated by state or local governmental authorities. The EPA, however, has taken the position that certain aspects of hydraulic fracturing with fluids containing diesel fuel may be subject to regulation under the UIC Program, specifically as "Class II" UIC wells. In February 2014, the EPA released an interpretive memorandum to clarify UIC Program requirements under the SDWA for underground injection of diesel fuels in hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas extraction and issued technical guidance containing recommendations for EPA permit writers to consider in implementing these UIC "Class II" requirements. Among other things, the memorandum and technical guidance clarified that any owner or operator who injects diesel fuels in hydraulic fracturing for oil or gas extraction must obtain a UIC "Class II" permit before injection. The EPA also issued final rules in 2012 that included the first federal air standards for natural gas and oil wells that are hydraulically fractured, along with other requirements for several other sources of pollution in the oil and gas industry that had not been regulated at the federal level. In addition, the EPA has commenced a study of the potential environmental impacts of hydraulic fracturing activities, a committee of the U.S. House of Representatives (the "House") conducted an investigation of hydraulic fracturing practices and a subcommittee of the Secretary of Energy Advisory Board (the "SEAB") of the U.S. Department of Energy was tasked with recommending steps to improve the safety and environmental performance of hydraulic fracturing. As part of these studies, the EPA, the House committee and the SEAB subcommittee requested that certain companies provide them with information concerning the chemicals used in the hydraulic fracturing process. These studies could potentially spur initiatives to further regulate hydraulic fracturing under the SDWA or otherwise. The SEAB subcommittee issued a preliminary report in August 2011 and a final report in November 2011 recommending, among other things,

## **Table of Contents**

measures to improve and protect air and water quality, improvements in communication among state and federal regulators, elimination of diesel fuel in shale gas production, disclosure of fracturing fluid composition and the creation of a publicly accessible database organizing all publicly disclosed information with respect to hydraulic fracturing operations. Legislation has been introduced before the U.S. Congress to provide for federal regulation of hydraulic fracturing under the SDWA and to require disclosure of the chemicals used in the hydraulic fracturing process. If this or similar legislation becomes law, the legislation could establish an additional level of federal regulation that may lead to additional permitting requirements or other operating restrictions, making it more difficult to complete natural gas and oil wells in shale formations. This could increase our customers' costs of compliance and doing business or otherwise adversely affect the hydraulic fracturing services they perform, which may negatively impact demand for our frac sand products.

In addition, the federal Bureau of Land Management (the "BLM") and various state, local and foreign governments have implemented, or are considering, increased regulatory oversight of hydraulic fracturing through additional permitting requirements, operational restrictions, disclosure requirements and temporary or permanent bans on hydraulic fracturing in certain areas such as environmentally sensitive watersheds. For example, Vermont banned hydraulic fracturing in the state in 2012 and certain states such as New York and New Jersey issued moratoriums on hydraulic fracturing while they considered studies of and regulations regarding hydraulic fracturing, although New Jersey's moratorium expired in 2013. A number of local municipalities across the United States have instituted measures resulting in temporary or permanent bans on or otherwise limiting or delaying hydraulic fracturing in their jurisdictions. Such moratoriums and bans could make it more difficult to conduct hydraulic fracturing operations and increase our customers' cost of doing business, which could negatively impact demand for our frac sand products. The BLM also proposed and is in the process of reconsidering regulations requiring disclosure of chemicals used in the hydraulic fracturing process both before and after any drilling on federal public land, and Arkansas, Colorado, Idaho, Illinois, Indiana, Louisiana, Michigan, Mississippi, Montana, New Mexico, North Dakota, Ohio, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, South Dakota, Tennessee, Texas, Utah, West Virginia and Wyoming have enacted legislation or issued regulations which impose various disclosure requirements on hydraulic fracturing operators. The availability of information regarding the constituents of hydraulic fracturing fluids could make it easier for third parties opposing the hydraulic fracturing process to initiate individual or class action legal proceedings based on allegations that specific chemicals used in the hydraulic fracturing process could adversely affect groundwater and drinking water supplies or otherwise cause harm to human health or the environment. Moreover, disclosure to third parties or to the public, even if inadvertent, of our customers' proprietary chemical formulas could diminish the value of those formulas and result in competitive harm to our customers, which could indirectly impact our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The adoption of new laws or regulations at the federal, state, local or foreign levels imposing reporting obligations on, or otherwise limiting or delaying, the hydraulic fracturing process could make it more difficult to complete natural gas and oil wells in shale formations, increase our customers' costs of compliance and doing business and otherwise adversely affect the hydraulic fracturing services they perform, which could negatively impact demand for our frac sand products. In addition, heightened political, regulatory and public scrutiny of hydraulic fracturing practices could potentially expose us or our customers to increased legal and regulatory proceedings, and any such proceedings could be time-consuming, costly or result in substantial legal liability or significant reputational harm. Any such developments could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, whether directly or indirectly. For example, we could be directly affected by adverse litigation involving us, or indirectly affected if the cost of compliance limits the ability of our customers to operate in the geographic areas we serve.

---

**Table of Contents**

***Our operations are dependent on our rights and ability to mine our properties and on our having renewed or received the required permits and approvals from governmental authorities and other third parties.***

We hold numerous governmental, environmental, mining and other permits, water rights and approvals authorizing operations at each of our facilities. A decision by a governmental agency or other third party to deny or delay issuing a new or renewed permit or approval, or to revoke or substantially modify an existing permit or approval, could have a material adverse effect on our ability to continue operations at the affected facility. Expansion of our existing operations is also predicated on securing the necessary environmental or other permits, water rights or approvals, which we may not receive in a timely manner or at all. In addition, our facilities are located near existing and proposed third-party industrial operations that could affect our ability to fully extract, or the manner in which we extract, the mineral deposits to which we have mining rights.

Title to, and the area of, mineral properties and water rights may also be disputed. Mineral properties sometimes contain claims or transfer histories that examiners cannot verify. A successful claim that we do not have title to one or more of our properties or lack appropriate water rights could cause us to lose any rights to explore, develop and extract any minerals on that property, without compensation for our prior expenditures relating to such property. Our business may suffer a material adverse effect in the event one or more of our properties are determined to have title deficiencies.

In some instances, we have received access rights or easements from third parties, which allow for a more efficient operation than would exist without the access or easement. A third party could take action to suspend the access or easement, and any such action could be materially adverse to our results of operations or financial condition.

***We may not be able to successfully implement our capacity expansion plans within our current timetable, the actual costs of the capacity expansion may exceed our current estimated costs and we may not be able to secure demand for the incremental production capacity. In addition, actual operating costs once we have completed the capacity expansion may be higher than anticipated.***

In 2013, our new resin-coated sand facility became fully operational, with capacity to resin coat up to 400 million pounds of sand annually and our Sparta, Wisconsin facility became fully operational with an annual raw sand production capacity of 1,700,000 tons. We also made an initial investment in a new Greenfield site near Utica, Illinois, which we expect to become fully operational by the end of the second quarter of 2014 and to have an annual capacity of approximately 1,500,000 tons of raw frac sand. In addition, we are evaluating the potential development of a Greenfield project in Eau Claire County, Wisconsin, which, depending on market conditions, could become operational as early as late 2015 and potentially add 3,000,000 tons of annual frac sand capacity.

Under our current business plan, we expect to fund our expansion plan through a combination of cash on our balance sheet and cash generated from our operations. If the assumptions on which we based our estimated capital expenditures change or are inaccurate, we may require additional funding. Such funding may not be available on terms acceptable to us, or at all. Moreover, actual operating costs once we have completed the capacity expansion may be higher than initially anticipated. We also have not secured off-take commitments for the incremental production from our capacity expansion plans, and we may not be able to secure adequate demand for the incremental production. Furthermore, substantial investments in transportation infrastructure have been and will be required to effectively execute the capacity expansion, and we may not be successful in expanding our logistical capabilities to accommodate the additional production capacity.

Any failure to successfully implement our capacity expansion plans due to an inability to obtain necessary permits, insufficient funding, delays, unanticipated costs or other factors, or failure to realize the anticipated benefits of our capacity expansion plans, including securing demand for the incremental production, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

## **Table of Contents**

***Our future performance will depend on our ability to succeed in competitive markets, and on our ability to appropriately react to potential fluctuations in demand for and supply of our products.***

We operate in a highly competitive market that is characterized by a small number of large, national producers and a larger number of small, regional or local producers. Competition in the industry is based on price, consistency and quality of product, site location, distribution capability, customer service, reliability of supply, breadth of product offering and technical support. As transportation costs are a significant portion of the total cost to customers of commercial silica in many instances transportation costs can represent more than 50% of delivered cost the commercial silica market is typically local, and competition from beyond the local area is limited. Notable exceptions to this are the frac sand and fillers and extenders markets, where certain product characteristics are not available in all deposits and not all plants have the requisite processing capabilities, necessitating that some products be shipped for extended distances.

We compete with large, national producers such as Unimin Corporation, Fairmount Minerals, Ltd., Badger Mining Corporation and Premier Silica. Our larger competitors may have greater financial and other resources than we do, may develop technology superior to ours or may have production facilities that are located closer to key customers than ours.

Because the markets for our products are typically local, we also compete with smaller, regional or local producers. For instance, in recent years there has been an increase in the number of small producers servicing the frac sand market due to an increased demand for hydraulic fracturing services. Should the demand for hydraulic fracturing services decrease or the supply of frac sand available in the market increase, prices in the frac sand market could materially decrease as less-efficient producers exit the market, selling frac sand at below market prices. In addition, oil and natural gas exploration and production companies and other providers of hydraulic fracturing services could acquire their own frac sand reserves, expand their existing frac sand production capacity or otherwise fulfill their own proppant requirements and existing or new frac sand producers could add to or expand their frac sand production capacity, which would negatively impact demand for our frac sand products. We may not be able to compete successfully against either our larger or smaller competitors in the future, and competition could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects.

***A large portion of our sales is generated by our top ten customers, and the loss of, or a significant reduction in, purchases by our largest customers could adversely affect our operations.***

Our top ten customers made up 52%, 37% and 44% of our total sales revenue during the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012, and 2011, respectively, with no single customer accounting for more than 10% of the total sales revenue in any given year. During 2013, we had long-term, competitively-bid supply contracts with seven customers in the oil and gas proppants end market, all of which were among our top ten overall customers, including our top customer for 2013. These agreements have initial terms expiring between 2013 and 2016. As of February 26, 2014, we maintained long-term supply contracts with five customers, all of which were among our top ten overall customers. While some of our largest customers have entered into supply contracts with us, these customers may not continue to purchase the same levels of our commercial silica products in the future due to a variety of reasons, contract requirements notwithstanding. For example, some of our top customers could go out of business or, alternatively, be acquired by other companies that purchase the same products and services provided by us from other third-party providers. Our customers could also seek to capture and develop their own sources of commercial silica. If any of our major customers substantially reduces or altogether ceases purchasing our commercial silica products, we could suffer a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects.

In addition, the long-term supply agreements we have may negatively impact our results of operations. Certain of our long-term agreements are for sales at fixed prices that are adjusted only for certain cost increases. As a result, in periods with increasing prices, our sales could grow at a slower rate than industry spot prices.



## **Table of Contents**

***Increasing costs or a lack of dependability or availability of transportation services or infrastructure could have an adverse effect on our ability to deliver products at competitive prices.***

Because of the relatively low cost of producing commercial silica, transportation and handling costs tend to be a significant component of the total delivered cost of sales. The high relative cost of transportation tends to favor manufacturers located in close proximity to the customer. In addition, as we continue to expand our commercial silica production, we will need increased transportation services, including rail cars. We contract with truck, rail and barge services to move commercial silica from our production facilities to distribution outlets and our customers, and increased costs under these contracts could adversely affect our results of operations if we are unable to pass these costs on to our customers. In addition, we bear the risk of non-delivery under our customer contracts. In certain instances we commit to deliver products to our customers prior to production, under penalty of nonperformance. Labor disputes, derailments, adverse weather conditions or other environmental events, an increasingly tight railcar leasing market and changes to rail freight systems could interrupt or limit available transportation services. A significant increase in transportation service rates, a reduction in the dependability or availability of transportation services or relocation of our customers' businesses to areas farther from our plants could impair our ability to deliver our products economically to our customers and to expand our markets.

***Seasonal and severe weather conditions could have a material adverse impact on our business.***

Our business could be materially adversely affected by weather conditions. Severe weather conditions may affect our customers' operations, thus reducing their need for our products, as was the case in December 2013. Weather conditions may impact our operations, resulting in weather-related damage to our facilities and equipment or an inability to deliver equipment, personnel and products to job sites in accordance with contract schedules. In addition, the EPA has stated that climate change may lead to the increased frequency and severity of extreme weather events. Any such interference with our operations could force us to delay or curtail services and potentially breach our contractual obligations or result in a loss of productivity and an increase in our operating costs.

***Our production process consumes large amounts of natural gas and electricity. An increase in the price or a significant interruption in the supply of these or any other energy sources could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations.***

Energy costs, primarily natural gas and electricity, represented approximately 5% of our total sales in 2013. Natural gas is the primary fuel source used for drying in the commercial silica production process and, as such, our profitability is impacted by the price and availability of natural gas we purchase from third parties. The price and supply of natural gas are unpredictable and can fluctuate significantly based on international, political and economic circumstances, as well as other events outside our control, such as changes in supply and demand due to weather conditions, actions by OPEC and other oil and natural gas producers, regional production patterns and environmental concerns. In addition, potential climate change regulations or carbon or emissions taxes could result in higher production costs for energy, which may be passed on to us in whole or in part. In the past, the price of natural gas has been extremely volatile, and we expect this volatility to continue. For example, during the year ended December 31, 2013, the monthly closing price of natural gas ranged from a high of \$4.15 per million British Thermal Units ( BTUs ) to a low of \$3.23 per million BTUs. In order to manage this risk, we may hedge natural gas prices through the use of derivative financial instruments, such as forwards, swaps and futures. However, these measures carry risk (including nonperformance by counterparties) and do not in any event entirely eliminate the risk of decreased margins as a result of natural gas price increases. A significant increase in the price of energy that is not recovered through an increase in the price of our products or covered through our hedging arrangements or an extended interruption in the supply of natural gas or electricity to our production facilities could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects.

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Increases in the price of diesel fuel may adversely affect our results of operations.***

Diesel fuel costs generally fluctuate with increasing and decreasing world crude oil prices, and accordingly are subject to political, economic and market factors that are outside of our control. Our operations are dependent on earthmoving equipment, railcars and tractor trailers, and diesel fuel costs are a significant component of the operating expense of these vehicles. We use earthmoving equipment in our mining operations, and we ship the vast majority of our products by either railcar or tractor trailer. To the extent that we perform these services with equipment that we own, we are responsible for buying and supplying the diesel fuel needed to operate these vehicles. To the extent that these services are provided by independent contractors, we may be subject to fuel surcharges that attempt to recoup increased diesel fuel expenses. To the extent we are unable to pass along increased diesel fuel costs to our customers, our results of operations could be adversely affected.

### ***Diminished access to water may adversely affect our operations.***

The mining and processing activities in which we engage at a number of our facilities require significant amounts of water, and some of our facilities are located in areas that are water-constrained. We have obtained water rights that we currently use to service the activities on our various properties, and we plan to obtain all required water rights to service other properties we may develop or acquire in the future. However, the amount of water that we are entitled to use pursuant to our water rights must be determined by the appropriate regulatory authorities in the jurisdictions in which we operate. Such regulatory authorities may amend the regulations regarding such water rights, increase the cost of maintaining such water rights or eliminate our current water rights, and we may be unable to retain all or a portion of such water rights. For instance, there are proposed regulations reducing water rights per acre for the aquifer accessed by our Mill Creek, Oklahoma facility. These new regulations, which could also affect local municipalities and other industrial operations, could have a material adverse effect on our operating costs and effectiveness if implemented. Such changes in laws, regulations or government policy and related interpretations pertaining to water rights may alter the environment in which we do business, which may negatively affect our financial condition and results of operations.

Title to, and the area of, water rights may also be disputed, including by Native American tribes asserting historical water rights. A successful claim that we lack appropriate water rights on one or more of our properties could cause us to lose any rights to explore, develop and operate mines on that property. Any decrease or disruption in our water rights or available water supply as a result of any of the above factors may adversely affect our operations.

### ***The manufacture of resin-coated sand is a new process for us, and failure to effectively integrate this new process with our existing processes could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.***

In 2013, our resin-coating facility in Rochelle, Illinois that produces resin-coated sand, which is a higher-strength alternative to traditional frac sand and involves a manufacturing process with which we are relatively inexperienced, became fully operational. If we are unable to operate this facility effectively or to secure adequate, cost-effective supply commitments for the raw materials associated with resin-coated sand, our ability to sell this product to the marketplace may be adversely impacted. In addition, there are attendant risks of market acceptance and product performance that could result in less demand than anticipated and our having excess capacity. A lack of sales of resin-coated sand could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

## **Table of Contents**

***If we cannot successfully complete acquisitions or integrate acquired businesses, our growth may be limited and our financial condition may be adversely affected.***

Our business strategy includes supplementing internal growth by pursuing acquisitions of complementary businesses. Any acquisition involves potential risks, including, among other things:

the validity of our assumptions about mineral reserves, future production, sales, capital expenditures, operating expenses and costs, including synergies;

an inability to successfully integrate the businesses we acquire;

the use of a significant portion of our available cash or borrowing capacity to finance acquisitions and the subsequent decrease in our liquidity;

a significant increase in our interest expense or financial leverage if we incur additional debt to finance acquisitions;

the assumption of unknown liabilities, losses or costs for which we are not indemnified or for which our indemnity is inadequate;

the diversion of management's attention from other business concerns;

an inability to hire, train or retain qualified personnel both to manage and to operate our growing business and assets;

the incurrence of other significant charges, such as impairment of goodwill or other intangible assets, asset devaluation or restructuring charges;

unforeseen difficulties encountered in operating in new geographic areas;

customer or key employee losses at the acquired businesses; and

the accuracy of data obtained from production reports and engineering studies, geophysical and geological analyses and other information used when deciding to acquire a property, the results of which are often inconclusive and subject to various interpretations.

If we cannot successfully complete acquisitions or integrate acquired businesses, our growth may be limited and our financial condition may be adversely affected.

***We will be required to make substantial capital expenditures to maintain, develop and increase our asset base. The inability to obtain needed capital or financing on satisfactory terms, or at all, could have an adverse effect on our growth and profitability.***

Although we currently use a significant amount of our cash reserves and cash generated from our operations to fund the maintenance and development of our existing mineral reserves and our acquisitions of new mineral reserves, we may depend on the availability of credit to fund future capital expenditures. Our ability to obtain bank financing or to access the capital markets for future equity or debt offerings may be

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

limited by our financial condition at the time of any such financing or offering, the covenants contained in our existing credit facilities or future debt agreements, adverse market conditions or other contingencies and uncertainties that are beyond our control. Our failure to obtain the funds necessary to maintain, develop and increase our asset base could adversely impact our growth and profitability.

Even if we are able to obtain financing or access the capital markets, incurring additional debt may significantly increase our interest expense and financial leverage, and our level of indebtedness could restrict our ability to fund future development and acquisition activities. In addition, the issuance of additional common stock in an equity offering may result in significant stockholder dilution.

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Our substantial indebtedness and pension obligations could adversely affect our financial flexibility and our competitive position.***

We have, and we will continue to have, a significant amount of indebtedness. As of December 31, 2013, we had \$371.5 million of outstanding indebtedness. Under our senior secured credit facility, as of December 31, 2013, we had a \$50 million line-of-credit, of which \$9.0 million is being used for outstanding letters of credit, leaving \$41.0 million of borrowing availability. Our substantial level of indebtedness increases the risk that we may be unable to generate cash sufficient to pay amounts due in respect of our indebtedness. We also have, and will continue to have, significant pension obligations. As of December 31, 2013, our unfunded pension obligations totaled \$14.5 million. Our substantial indebtedness and pension obligations could have other important consequences to you and significant effects on our business. For example, they could:

increase our vulnerability to adverse changes in general economic, industry and competitive conditions;

require us to dedicate a substantial portion of our cash flow from operations to make payments on our indebtedness and pension obligations, thereby reducing the availability of our cash flow to fund working capital, capital expenditures and other general corporate purposes;

limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our business and the industry in which we operate;

restrict us from exploiting business opportunities;

make it more difficult to satisfy our financial obligations, including payments on our indebtedness;

place us at a disadvantage compared to our competitors that have less debt and pension obligations; and

limit our ability to borrow additional funds for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions, debt service requirements, execution of our business strategy or other general corporate purposes.

### ***Our senior secured credit facility contains certain restrictions and financial covenants that may restrict our business and financing activities***

Our existing senior secured credit facility contains, and any future financing agreements that we may enter into will likely contain, operating and financial restrictions and covenants that may restrict our ability to finance future operations or capital needs or to engage in, expand or pursue our business activities.

Our ability to comply with these restrictions and covenants is uncertain and will be affected by the levels of cash flow from our operations and events or circumstances beyond our control. If market or other economic conditions deteriorate, our ability to comply with these covenants may be impaired. If we violate any of the restrictions, covenants, ratios or tests in our senior secured credit facility, a significant portion of our indebtedness may become immediately due and payable and our lenders' commitment to make further loans to us may terminate. We might not have, or be able to obtain, sufficient funds to make these accelerated payments. In addition, our obligations under our senior secured credit facility are secured by substantially all of our assets, and if we are unable to repay our indebtedness under our senior secured credit facility, the lenders could seek to foreclose on our assets.

### ***We may incur substantial debt in the future to enable us to maintain or increase our production levels and to otherwise pursue our business plan. This debt may impair our ability to operate our business.***

Our business plan requires a significant amount of capital expenditures to maintain and grow our production levels. If commercial silica prices were to decline for an extended period of time, if the costs of our acquisition and development operations were to increase substantially or if other events were to occur which reduced our sales or increased our costs, we may be required to borrow significant amounts in the future to

enable us to

## **Table of Contents**

finance the expenditures necessary to replace the reserves we produce. The cost of the borrowings and our obligations to repay the borrowings could have important consequences to us, including:

our ability to obtain additional financing, if necessary, for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions or other purposes may be impaired or such financing may not be available on favorable terms, or at all;

covenants contained in our existing and future credit and debt arrangements will require us to meet financial tests that may affect our flexibility in planning for, and reacting to, changes in our business, including possible acquisition opportunities;

we will need a substantial portion of our cash flow to make principal and interest payments on our indebtedness and to improve the funded status of our defined benefit pension plan, reducing the funds that would otherwise be available for operations and future business opportunities; and

our debt level will make us more vulnerable than our less leveraged competitors to competitive pressures or a downturn in our business or the economy generally.

Our ability to service our indebtedness will depend on, among other things, our future financial and operating performance, which will be affected by prevailing economic conditions and financial, business, regulatory and other factors, some of which are beyond our control. If our operating results are not sufficient to service our current or future indebtedness, we will be forced to take actions such as reducing or delaying business activities, acquisitions, investments and/or capital expenditures; selling assets; restructuring or refinancing our indebtedness; or seeking additional equity capital or bankruptcy protection. We may not be able to affect any of these remedies on satisfactory terms or at all.

### ***Inaccuracies in our estimates of mineral reserves and resource deposits could result in lower than expected sales and higher than expected costs.***

We base our mineral reserve and resource estimates on engineering, economic and geological data assembled and analyzed by our engineers and geologists, which are reviewed periodically by outside firms. However, commercial silica reserve estimates are necessarily imprecise and depend to some extent on statistical inferences drawn from available drilling data, which may prove unreliable. There are numerous uncertainties inherent in estimating quantities and qualities of commercial silica reserves and non-reserve commercial silica deposits and costs to mine recoverable reserves, including many factors beyond our control. Estimates of economically recoverable commercial silica reserves necessarily depend on a number of factors and assumptions, all of which may vary considerably from actual results, such as:

geological and mining conditions and/or effects from prior mining that may not be fully identified by available data or that may differ from experience;

assumptions concerning future prices of commercial silica products, operating costs, mining technology improvements, development costs and reclamation costs; and

assumptions concerning future effects of regulation, including the issuance of required permits and taxes by governmental agencies. Any inaccuracy in our estimates related to our mineral reserves and non-reserve mineral deposits could result in lower than expected sales and higher than expected costs.

### ***A shortage of skilled labor together with rising labor costs in the mining industry may further increase operating costs, which could adversely affect our results of operations.***

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Efficient mining using modern techniques and equipment requires skilled laborers, preferably with several years of experience and proficiency in multiple mining tasks, including processing of mined minerals. If the shortage of experienced labor continues or worsens or if we are unable to train the necessary number of skilled



## **Table of Contents**

laborers, there could be an adverse impact on our labor productivity and costs and our ability to expand production.

As a result of current market conditions and the high demand for skilled labor in certain regions in which we operate, we are experiencing a record level of labor costs, and we expect the cost of labor to increase in the future. If the prices for our products decrease in the future, labor costs may not be commensurately reduced.

### ***Our business may suffer if we lose, or are unable to attract and retain, key personnel.***

We depend to a large extent on the services of our senior management team and other key personnel. Members of our senior management and other key employees have extensive experience and expertise in evaluating and analyzing industrial mineral properties, maximizing production from such properties, marketing industrial mineral production and developing and executing financing and hedging strategies. Competition for management and key personnel is intense, and the pool of qualified candidates is limited. The loss of any of these individuals or the failure to attract additional personnel, as needed, could have a material adverse effect on our operations and could lead to higher labor costs or the use of less-qualified personnel. In addition, if any of our executives or other key employees were to join a competitor or form a competing company, we could lose customers, suppliers, know-how and key personnel. We do not maintain key-man life insurance with respect to any of our employees. Our success will be dependent on our ability to continue to attract, employ and retain highly skilled personnel.

### ***Our profitability could be negatively affected if we fail to maintain satisfactory labor relations.***

As of December 31, 2013, various labor unions represented approximately 47% of our employees. If we are unable to renegotiate acceptable collective bargaining agreements with these labor unions in the future, we could experience, among other things, strikes, work stoppages or other slowdowns by our workers and increased operating costs as a result of higher wages, health care costs or benefits paid to our employees. An inability to maintain good relations with our workforce could cause a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

### ***We rely upon trade secrets and contractual restrictions, and not patents, to protect our proprietary rights. Failure to protect our intellectual property rights may undermine our competitive position, and protecting our rights or defending against third-party allegations of infringement may be costly.***

Our commercial success depends on our proprietary information and technologies, know-how and other intellectual property. Because of the technical nature of our business, we rely on trade secrets, trademarks and contractual restrictions to protect our intellectual property rights and currently do not hold any patents related to our business. The measures we take to protect our trade secrets and other intellectual property rights may be insufficient. Failure to protect, monitor and control the use of our existing intellectual property rights could cause us to lose our competitive advantage and incur significant expenses. It is possible that our competitors or others could independently develop the same or similar technologies or otherwise obtain access to our unpatented technologies. In such case, our trade secrets would not prevent third parties from competing with us. As a result, our results of operations may be adversely affected. Furthermore, third parties or employees may infringe or misappropriate our proprietary technologies or other intellectual property rights, which could also harm our business and results of operations. Policing unauthorized use of intellectual property rights can be difficult and expensive, and adequate remedies may not be available.

In addition, third parties may claim that our products infringe or otherwise violate their patents or other proprietary rights and seek corresponding damages or injunctive relief. Defending ourselves against such claims, with or without merit, could be time-consuming and result in costly litigation. An adverse outcome in any such litigation could subject us to significant liability to third parties (potentially including treble damages) or temporary or permanent injunctions prohibiting the manufacture or sale of our products, the use of our

## **Table of Contents**

technologies or the conduct of our business. Any adverse outcome could also require us to seek licenses from third parties (which may not be available on acceptable terms, or at all) or to make substantial one-time or ongoing royalty payments. Protracted litigation could also result in our customers or potential customers deferring or limiting their purchase or use of our products until resolution of such litigation. In addition, we may not have insurance coverage in connection with such litigation and may have to bear all costs arising from any such litigation to the extent we are unable to recover them from other parties. Any of these outcomes could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects.

***We may have to utilize significant cash to meet our unfunded pension obligations and post-retirement health care liabilities and these obligations are subject to increase.***

Many of our employees participate in our defined benefit pension plans. In 2013, we made payments totaling \$2.3 million toward reducing the unfunded liability of our defined benefit pension plans. Declines in interest rates or the market values of the securities held by the plans, or other adverse changes, could materially increase the underfunded status of our plans and affect the level and timing of required cash contributions. To the extent we use cash to reduce these unfunded liabilities, the amount of cash available for our working capital needs would be reduced. In addition, under the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended ( ERISA ), the Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation ( PBGC ) has the authority to institute proceedings to terminate a pension plan if (1) the plan has not met the minimum funding requirements, (2) the plan cannot pay current benefits when due, (3) a lump sum payment has been made to a participant who is a substantial owner of the sponsoring company (and certain other technical conditions exist) or (4) the loss to the PBGC is reasonably expected to increase unreasonably over time if the plan is not terminated. In the event our tax-qualified pension plans are terminated by the PBGC, we could be liable to the PBGC for the underfunded amount, which could trigger default provisions in our credit facilities. As of December 31, 2013, our pension obligation was \$99.8 million (with plan assets of \$85.4 million). The amount of cash ultimately required to fund these obligations will vary based on a number of factors including future return on assets, mortality rates and other such actuarial assumptions. Based on current assumptions, we expect to pay \$4.6 million in the year 2014, a total of \$8.5 million for the two-year period from 2015 through 2016 and a total of \$5.4 million for the two-year period from 2017 through 2018.

We also have a post-retirement health and life insurance plan for many of our employees. The post-retirement benefit plan is unfunded. We derive post-retirement benefit expense from an actuarial calculation based on the provisions of the plan and a number of assumptions provided by us including information about employee demographics, retirement age, future health care costs, turnover, mortality, discount rate, amount and timing of claims and a health care inflation trend rate. Our post-retirement healthcare obligations were \$22.3 million as of December 31, 2013. Based on current assumptions, we expect to pay \$1.4 million in the year 2014, a total of \$2.8 million for the two-year period from 2015 through 2016, a total of \$3.0 million for the two-year period from 2017 through 2018 and a total of \$15.1 million thereafter. See Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Contractual Obligations.

***Failure to maintain effective quality control systems at our mining, processing and production facilities could have a material adverse effect on our business and operations.***

The performance, quality and safety of our products are critical to the success of our business. These factors depend significantly on the effectiveness of our quality control systems, which, in turn, depends on a number of factors, including the design of our quality control systems, our quality-training program and our ability to ensure that our employees adhere to the quality control policies and guidelines. Any significant failure or deterioration of our quality control systems could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and reputation.

## **Table of Contents**

***Our sales and profitability fluctuate on a seasonal basis and are affected by a variety of other factors.***

Our sales and profitability are affected by a variety of factors, including actions of competitors, changes in general economic conditions, weather conditions and seasonal periods. As a result, our results of operations fluctuate on a quarterly basis and relative to corresponding periods in prior years, and any of these factors could adversely affect our business and cause our results of operations to decline. For example, we sell more of our products in the second and third quarters in the building products and recreation end markets due to the seasonal rise in construction driven by more favorable weather conditions. We sell fewer of our products in the first and fourth quarters due to reduced construction and recreational activity largely as a result of adverse weather conditions. Any unanticipated decrease in demand for our products during the second and third quarters could have a material adverse effect on our sales and profitability.

***We may be subject to interruptions or failures in our information technology systems.***

We rely on sophisticated information technology systems and infrastructure to support our business, including process control technology. Any of these systems may be susceptible to outages due to fire, floods, power loss, telecommunications failures and similar events. The failure of any of our information technology systems may cause disruptions in our operations, which could adversely affect our sales and profitability.

***A terrorist attack or armed conflict could harm our business.***

Terrorist activities, anti-terrorist efforts and other armed conflicts involving the United States could adversely affect the U.S. and global economies and could prevent us from meeting financial and other obligations. We could experience loss of business, delays or defaults in payments from payors or disruptions of fuel supplies and markets if pipelines, production facilities, processing plants or refineries are direct targets or indirect casualties of an act of terror or war. Such activities could reduce the overall demand for oil and natural gas, which, in turn, could also reduce the demand for our products and services. Terrorist activities and the threat of potential terrorist activities and any resulting economic downturn could adversely affect our results of operations, impair our ability to raise capital or otherwise adversely impact our ability to realize certain business strategies.

***If we fail to maintain adequate internal controls over financial reporting, we may not be able to report our financial results in a timely and reliable manner, which could harm our business and impact the value of our common stock.***

We depend on our ability to produce accurate and timely financial statements in order to run our business. If we fail to do so, our business could be negatively affected and our independent registered public accounting firm may be unable to attest to the accuracy of our financial statements and effectiveness of our internal controls.

If we fail to maintain effective internal controls in the future, it could result in a material misstatement of our financial statements that would not be prevented or detected on a timely basis, which could cause investors to lose confidence in our financial information or cause our stock price to decline.

## **Risks Related to Environmental, Mining and Other Regulation**

***We and our customers are subject to extensive environmental and health and safety regulations that impose, and will continue to impose, significant costs and liabilities. In addition, future regulations, or more stringent enforcement of existing regulations, could increase those costs and liabilities, which could adversely affect our results of operations.***

We are subject to a variety of federal, state and local regulatory environmental requirements affecting the mining and mineral processing industry, including among others, those relating to employee health and safety, environmental permitting and licensing, air and water emissions, greenhouse gas emissions, water pollution, waste management, remediation of soil and groundwater contamination, land use, reclamation and restoration of

## **Table of Contents**

properties, hazardous materials and natural resources. These laws, regulations and permits have had, and will continue to have, a significant effect on our business. Some environmental laws impose substantial penalties for noncompliance, and others, such as CERCLA, impose strict, retroactive and joint and several liability for the remediation of releases of hazardous substances. Liability under CERCLA, or similar state and local laws, may be imposed as a result of conduct that was lawful at the time it occurred or for the conduct of, or conditions caused by, prior operators or other third parties. Failure to properly handle, transport, store or dispose of hazardous materials or otherwise conduct our operations in compliance with environmental laws could expose us to liability for governmental penalties, cleanup costs and civil or criminal liability associated with releases of such materials into the environment, damages to property or natural resources and other damages, as well as potentially impair our ability to conduct our operations. In addition, future environmental laws and regulations could restrict our ability to expand our facilities or extract our mineral deposits or could require us to acquire costly equipment or to incur other significant expenses in connection with our business. Future events, including changes in any environmental requirements (or their interpretation or enforcement) and the costs associated with complying with such requirements, could have a material adverse effect on us.

Any failure by us to comply with applicable environmental laws and regulations may cause governmental authorities to take actions that could adversely impact our operations and financial condition, including:

issuance of administrative, civil and criminal penalties;

denial, modification or revocation of permits or other authorizations;

imposition of injunctive obligations or other limitations on our operations, including cessation of operations; and

requirements to perform site investigatory, remedial or other corrective actions.

Moreover, environmental requirements, and the interpretation and enforcement thereof, change frequently and have tended to become more stringent over time. For example, greenhouse gas emission regulation is becoming more rigorous. We expect to be required to report annual greenhouse gas emissions from our operations to the EPA, and additional greenhouse gas emission related requirements at the supranational, federal, state, regional and local levels are in various stages of development. The U.S. Congress has considered, and may adopt in the future, various legislative proposals to address climate change, including a nationwide limit on greenhouse gas emissions. In addition, the EPA has issued regulations, including the Tailoring Rule, that subject greenhouse gas emissions from certain stationary sources to the Prevention of Significant Deterioration and Title V provisions of the federal Clean Air Act. Any such regulations could require us to modify existing permits or obtain new permits, implement additional pollution control technology, curtail operations or increase significantly our operating costs. Any regulation of greenhouse gas emissions, including, for example, through a cap-and-trade system, technology mandate, emissions tax, reporting requirement or other program, could adversely affect our business, financial condition, reputation, operating performance and product demand.

In addition to environmental regulation, we are subject to laws and regulations relating to human exposure to crystalline silica. Several federal and state regulatory authorities, including the U.S. Mining Safety and Health Administration and the U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration, may continue to propose changes in their regulations regarding workplace exposure to crystalline silica, such as permissible exposure limits and required controls and personal protective equipment. For instance, in August 2013, OSHA proposed regulations that would reduce permissible exposure limits to 50 micrograms of respirable crystalline silica per cubic meter of air, averaged over an 8-hour day. Both the North American Industrial Mining Association and the National Industrial Sand Association, both of which we are a member, track silicosis-related issues and aim to work with government policymakers in crafting such regulations.

We may not be able to comply with any new laws and regulations that are adopted, and any new laws and regulations could have a material adverse effect on our operating results by requiring us to modify our operations or equipment or shut down some or all of our plants. Additionally, our customers may not be able to comply with

## **Table of Contents**

any new laws and regulations, and any new laws and regulations could have a material adverse effect on our customers by requiring them to shut down old plants or to relocate plants to locations with less stringent regulations farther away from our facilities. We cannot at this time reasonably estimate our costs of compliance or the timing of any costs associated with any new laws and regulations, or any material adverse effect that any new standards will have on our customers and, consequently, on our operations.

We are subject to various lawsuits relating to the actual or alleged exposure of persons to silica. See **Risks Related to Our Business** Silica-related health issues and litigation could have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation or results of operations.

***We are subject to the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977, which imposes stringent health and safety standards on numerous aspects of our operations.***

Our operations are subject to the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977, as amended by the Mine Improvement and New Emergency Response Act of 2006, which imposes stringent health and safety standards on numerous aspects of mineral extraction and processing operations, including the training of personnel, operating procedures, operating equipment and other matters. Our failure to comply with such standards, or changes in such standards or the interpretation or enforcement thereof, could have a material adverse effect on our business and financial condition or otherwise impose significant restrictions on our ability to conduct mineral extraction and processing operations.

***Silica-related health issues and litigation could have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation or results of operations.***

The inhalation of respirable crystalline silica is associated with the lung disease silicosis. There is recent evidence of an association between crystalline silica exposure or silicosis and lung cancer and a possible association with other diseases, including immune system disorders such as scleroderma. These health risks have been, and may continue to be, a significant issue confronting the commercial silica industry. Concerns over silicosis and other potential adverse health effects, as well as concerns regarding potential liability from the use of silica, may have the effect of discouraging our customers' use of our silica products. The actual or perceived health risks of mining, processing and handling silica could materially and adversely affect silica producers, including us, through reduced use of silica products, the threat of product liability or employee lawsuits, increased scrutiny by federal, state and local regulatory authorities of us and our customers or reduced financing sources available to the commercial silica industry.

Since at least 1975, we and/or our predecessors have been named as a defendant, usually among many defendants, in numerous products liability lawsuits brought by or on behalf of current or former employees of our customers alleging damages caused by silica exposure. We were the subject of 88 active silica exposure claims and 3,146 inactive claims as of February 26, 2014. Almost all of the claims pending against us arise out of the alleged use of our silica products in foundries or as an abrasive blast media, involve various other defendants and have been filed in the states of Texas, Louisiana and Mississippi, although some cases have been brought in many other jurisdictions over the years.

Prior to the fourth quarter of 2012, we had insurance policies for both our predecessors that covered certain claims for alleged silica exposure for periods prior to certain dates in 1985 and 1986 (with respect to various insurance). As a result of a settlement with a former owner and its insurers in the fourth quarter of 2012, some of these policies are no longer available to us and we will not seek reimbursement for any defense costs or claim payments from these policies. Other insurance policies, however, continue to remain available to us and will continue to make such payments on our behalf. The silica-related litigation brought against us to date and associated litigation costs, settlements and verdicts have not resulted in a material liability to us to date. However, we continue to have silica exposure claims filed against us, including claims that allege silica exposure for periods not covered by insurance, and the costs, outcome and impact to us of any pending or future claims is

## **Table of Contents**

not certain. Any such pending or future claims or inadequacies of our insurance coverage could have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and prospects. For further information, see Business Legal Proceedings.

***We and our customers are subject to other extensive regulations, including licensing, plant and wildlife protection and reclamation regulation, that impose, and will continue to impose, significant costs and liabilities. In addition, future regulations, or more stringent enforcement of existing regulations, could increase those costs and liabilities, which could adversely affect our results of operations.***

In addition to the regulatory matters described above, we and our customers are subject to extensive governmental regulation on matters such as permitting and licensing requirements, plant and wildlife protection, wetlands protection, reclamation and restoration of mining properties after mining is completed, the discharge of materials into the environment and the effects that mining and hydraulic fracturing have on groundwater quality and availability. Our future success depends, among other things, on the quantity of our commercial silica and other mineral deposits and our ability to extract these deposits profitably, and our customers being able to operate their businesses as they currently do.

In order to obtain permits and renewals of permits in the future, we may be required to prepare and present data to governmental authorities pertaining to the impact that any proposed exploration or production activities may have on the environment. Certain approval procedures may require preparation of archaeological surveys, endangered species studies and other studies to assess the environmental impact of new sites or the expansion of existing sites. Compliance with these regulatory requirements is expensive and significantly lengthens the time needed to develop a site. Finally, obtaining or renewing required permits is sometimes delayed or prevented due to community opposition and other factors beyond our control. The denial of a permit essential to our operations or the imposition of conditions with which it is not practicable or feasible to comply could impair or prevent our ability to develop or expand a site. Significant opposition to a permit by neighboring property owners, members of the public or other third parties or delay in the environmental review and permitting process also could impair or delay our ability to develop or expand a site. New legal requirements, including those related to the protection of the environment, could be adopted that could materially adversely affect our mining operations (including our ability to extract mineral deposits), our cost structure or our customers' ability to use our commercial silica products. Such current or future regulations could have a material adverse effect on our business and we may not be able to obtain or renew permits in the future.

***Our inability to acquire, maintain or renew financial assurances related to the reclamation and restoration of mining property could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.***

We are generally obligated to restore property in accordance with regulatory standards and our approved reclamation plan after it has been mined. We are required under federal, state and local laws to maintain financial assurances, such as surety bonds, to secure such obligations. The inability to acquire, maintain or renew such assurances, as required by federal, state and local laws, could subject us to fines and penalties as well as the revocation of our operating permits. Such inability could result from a variety of factors, including:

the lack of availability, higher expense or unreasonable terms of such financial assurances;

the ability of current and future financial assurance counterparties to increase required collateral; and

the exercise by financial assurance counterparties of any rights to refuse to renew the financial assurance instruments.

Our inability to acquire, maintain or renew necessary financial assurances related to the reclamation and restoration of mining property could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

## **Table of Contents**

*Mine closures entail substantial costs, and if we close one or more of our mines sooner than anticipated, our results of operations may be adversely affected.*

We base our assumptions regarding the life of our mines on detailed studies that we perform from time to time, but our studies and assumptions do not always prove to be accurate. If we close any of our mines sooner than expected, sales will decline unless we are able to increase production at any of our other mines, which may not be possible. The closure of an open pit mine also involves significant fixed closure costs, including accelerated employment legacy costs, severance-related obligations, reclamation and other environmental costs and the costs of terminating long-term obligations, including energy contracts and equipment leases. We accrue for the costs of reclaiming open pits, stockpiles, tailings ponds, roads and other mining support areas over the estimated mining life of our property. If we were to reduce the estimated life of any of our mines, the fixed mine closure costs would be applied to a shorter period of production, which would increase production costs per ton produced and could materially and adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Applicable statutes and regulations require that mining property be reclaimed following a mine closure in accordance with specified standards and an approved reclamation plan. The plan addresses matters such as removal of facilities and equipment, regrading, prevention of erosion and other forms of water pollution, re-vegetation and post-mining land use. We may be required to post a surety bond or other form of financial assurance equal to the cost of reclamation as set forth in the approved reclamation plan. The establishment of the final mine closure reclamation liability is based on permit requirements and requires various estimates and assumptions, principally associated with reclamation costs and production levels. If our accruals for expected reclamation and other costs associated with mine closures for which we will be responsible were later determined to be insufficient, our business, results of operations and financial condition would be adversely affected.

## **Risks Related to the Ownership of Our Common Stock**

*Our stock price could be volatile, and you may not be able to resell shares of your common stock at or above the price you paid.*

The stock market has and continues to experience extreme price and volume fluctuations that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of the underlying businesses. Given our limited history as a public company, these fluctuations may be even more pronounced in the trading market for our stock. In addition, many industries have experienced a period of significant disruption characterized by the bankruptcy, failure, collapse or sale of various companies, which led to increased volatility in securities prices and a significant level of intervention from the U.S. and other governments in securities markets. These broad market and industry factors may seriously harm the market price of our common stock, regardless of our actual operating performance.

In addition to the risks described in this section, the market price of our common stock may fluctuate significantly in response to a number of factors, most of which we cannot control, including:

quarterly variations in our operating results compared to market expectations;

announcements of acquisitions of or investments in other businesses and properties or dispositions;

changes in preferences of our customers;

announcements of new services or products or significant price reductions by us or our competitors;

size of the public float;

stock price performance of our competitors;

fluctuations in stock market prices and volumes;

default on our indebtedness or foreclosure on our properties;

actions by competitors;



## **Table of Contents**

changes in our management team or key personnel;

changes in ratings and financial estimates by securities analysts;

negative earnings or other announcements by us or other industrial companies;

downgrades in our credit ratings or the credit ratings of our competitors;

issuances of capital stock; and

global economic, legal and regulatory factors unrelated to our performance.

Numerous factors affect our business and cause variations in our operating results and affect our net sales, including overall economic trends, our ability to identify and respond effectively to customer preferences, actions by competitors, pricing, the level of customer service that we provide, changes in product mix or sales channels, our ability to source and distribute products effectively and weather conditions.

Volatility in the market price of our common stock may prevent investors from being able to sell their common stock at or above the price at which you purchased the stock. As a result, you may suffer a loss on your investment.

Securities class action litigation has often been instituted against companies following periods of volatility in the overall market and in the market price of a company's securities. This litigation, if instituted against us, could result in substantial costs, reduce our profits, divert our management's attention and resources and harm our business.

### ***Future sales of our common stock, or the perception in the public markets that these sales may occur, may depress our stock price.***

Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market or the perception that these sales could occur, could adversely affect the price of our common stock and could impair our ability to raise capital through the sale of additional shares. As of February 21, 2014, we have 53,551,879 shares of common stock outstanding. These shares of common stock are freely tradable without restriction under the Securities Act, except for any shares of our common stock that may be held or acquired by our directors, executive officers and other affiliates, as that term is defined in the Securities Act, which will be restricted or control shares under the Securities Act. Restricted or control shares may not be sold in the public market unless the sale is registered under the Securities Act or an exemption from registration is available. If a large number of shares are sold on the open market, the price of our common stock could decline.

In the future, we may also issue securities if we need to raise capital in connection with a capital raise or acquisition. The amount of shares of our common stock issued in connection with a capital raise or acquisition could constitute a material portion of our then outstanding shares of common stock.

### ***Anti-takeover provisions in our charter documents and Delaware law might discourage or delay acquisition attempts for us that you might consider favorable.***

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that may make the acquisition of our company more difficult without the approval of our Board. These provisions:

authorize the issuance of undesignated preferred stock, the terms of which may be established and the shares of which may be issued without stockholder approval, and which may include super voting, special approval, dividend, or other rights or preferences superior to the rights of the holders of common stock;

prohibit stockholder action by written consent, which requires all stockholder actions to be taken at a meeting of our stockholders;

## **Table of Contents**

provide that the Board is expressly authorized to make, alter or repeal our bylaws; and

establish advance notice requirements for nominations for elections to our Board or for proposing matters that can be acted upon by stockholders at stockholder meetings.

Our certificate of incorporation also contains a provision that provides us with protections similar to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the "DGCL"), and will prevent us from engaging in a business combination with a person who acquires at least 15% of our common stock for a period of three years from the date such person acquired such common stock, unless Board or stockholder approval is obtained prior to the acquisition. These anti-takeover provisions and other provisions under Delaware law could discourage, delay or prevent a transaction involving a change in control of our company, even if doing so would benefit our stockholders. These provisions could also discourage proxy contests and make it more difficult for you and other stockholders to elect directors of your choosing and to cause us to take other corporate actions you desire.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our stock price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock depends in part on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. If one or more of the analysts who covers us downgrades our stock or publishes inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our stock price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts ceases coverage of us or fails to publish reports on us regularly, demand for our stock could decrease, which could cause our stock price and trading volume to decline.

***Holders of our common stock may not receive dividends on our common stock.***

Holders of our common stock are entitled to receive only such dividends as our Board may declare out of funds legally available for such payments. We are incorporated in Delaware and are governed by the DGCL. The DGCL allows a corporation to pay dividends only out of a surplus, as determined under Delaware law or, if there is no surplus, out of net profits for the fiscal year in which the dividend was declared and for the preceding fiscal year. Under the DGCL, however, we cannot pay dividends out of net profits if, after we pay the dividend, our capital would be less than the capital represented by the outstanding stock of all classes having a preference upon the distribution of assets. While management and our Board remain committed to evaluating additional ways of creating shareholder value, any determination to pay dividends and other distributions in cash, stock or property by us in the future will be at the discretion of our Board and will be dependent on then-existing conditions, including business conditions, our financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital requirements, contractual restrictions including restrictive covenants contained in debt agreements and other factors. While we have recently declared and paid a quarterly cash dividend on our common stock as described under Part II, Item 5 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, we are not required to declare future cash dividends on our common stock.

***We incur increased costs as a result of being a public company.***

As a public company, we incur significant legal, accounting, insurance and other expenses, including costs associated with public company reporting requirements. We also have incurred and will incur costs associated with complying with the requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Dodd-Frank Act of 2010, and related rules implemented by the SEC and the NYSE. In particular, we have been required to do the following:

prepare and distribute periodic public reports and other stockholder communications in compliance with our obligations under the federal securities laws and NYSE rules;

create or expand the roles and duties of our Board, our Board committees and management;

institute more comprehensive financial reporting and disclosure compliance functions;

## **Table of Contents**

hire additional financial and accounting personnel and other experienced accounting and finance staff with the expertise to address the complex accounting matters applicable to public companies;

enhance and formalize closing procedures at the end of our accounting periods;

improve our internal control over financial reporting;

enhance our internal audit function;

establish an investor relations function;

establish new internal policies, such as those relating to disclosure controls and procedures and insider trading; and

retain and involve to a greater degree outside counsel and accountants in the activities listed above.

The expenses incurred by public companies generally for reporting and corporate governance purposes have been increasing. We expect these rules and regulations to increase our legal and financial compliance costs and to make some activities more time-consuming and costly, although we are currently unable to estimate these costs with any degree of certainty.

These laws and regulations could also make it more difficult or costly for us to obtain certain types of insurance, including director and officer liability insurance, and we may be forced to accept reduced policy limits and coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain the same or similar coverage. These laws and regulations could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to serve on our Board, our Board committees or as our executive officers. Furthermore, if we are unable to satisfy our obligations as a public company, we could be subject to delisting of our common stock, fines, sanctions and other regulatory action and potentially civil litigation.

## **ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS**

None.

## **ITEM 2. PROPERTIES**

Our corporate headquarters is located in Frederick, Maryland. In addition, we maintain corporate support centers and sales offices in Chicago, Illinois, Houston, Texas and Shanghai, China.

As of February 26, 2014, we operate 15 production facilities located primarily in the eastern half of the United States, with operations in Alabama, Illinois (2), Louisiana, Michigan, Missouri, New Jersey, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia, West Virginia and Wisconsin. We also own one undeveloped site in Arkansas and are developing a third production facility in Illinois, which we expect to take ownership of by the end of the second quarter of 2014. We also own a transload site and lease additional transload sites.

Additionally, we operate corporate laboratories located on-site at our Berkeley Springs, West Virginia and Houston, Texas facilities that provide critical technical expertise, analytical testing resources and application development to promote product value and cost savings. The following map shows the locations of our U.S. facilities.

## **Table of Contents**

We generally own our principal production properties, although some land is leased. Substantially all of our owned assets are pledged as security under our senior secured credit facility; for additional information regarding our indebtedness, see Item 7, Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Liquidity and Capital Resources. Corporate offices, including sales locations are leased. In general, we consider our facilities, taken as a whole, to be suitable and adequate for our current operations. However, we will continue to invest significant resources to increase production capacity through strategic initiatives, including Greenfield projects such as our new facility in Sparta, Wisconsin and Brownfield expansion projects such as the potential expansion of capacity at our existing facilities, including our new resin-coating facility.

### **Our Facilities**

The following is a detailed description of our 15 production facilities and our currently undeveloped site in Batesville, Arkansas.

#### *Ottawa, Illinois*

Our surface mines in Ottawa use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain and ground silica through a variety of mining methods, including hard rock mining, mechanical mining and hydraulic mining. The reserves are part of the St. Peter Sandstone deposit that stretches north-south from Minnesota to Missouri and east-west from Illinois to Nebraska and South Dakota. The facility is located approximately 80 miles southwest of Chicago and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 80.

We acquired the Ottawa facility in 1987 by merger with the Ottawa Silica Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain and ground silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including washing, hydraulic sizing, grinding,

## **Table of Contents**

screening and blending. These production techniques allow the Ottawa facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Ottawa facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products, foundry, fillers and extenders, chemicals and oil and gas proppants. In November 2009, we expanded the frac sand capacity of this facility by 500,000 tons. During the fourth quarter of 2011, we completed a follow-on expansion project that added an additional 900,000 tons of frac sand capacity. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is shipped either in bulk or packaged form by rail by either the CSX Corporation or the BNSF Railway Company (via the Illinois Railway short line), truck or barge through terminals located on the plant site and at a leased site approximately three miles from the plant. In 2013, we purchased a related existing silica sand processing facility from Quality Sand Products, LLC (QSP) in Peru, Illinois.

### *Mill Creek, Oklahoma*

Our surface mines in Mill Creek use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain, ground and fine ground silica through a variety of mining methods, including hard rock and hydraulic mining. The reserves are part of the Oil Creek Formation in south central Oklahoma. The facility is located approximately 100 miles southeast of Oklahoma City and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 35.

We acquired the Mill Creek facility in 1987 by merger with the Pennsylvania Glass Sand Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, grinding and scalping. These production techniques allow the Mill Creek facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Mill Creek facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, foundry, fillers and extenders, building products and oil and gas proppants. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped either by rail by BNSF Railway Company or by truck.

### *Pacific, Missouri*

Our surface mines at the Pacific facility use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain, ground and fine ground silica through a variety of mining methods, including hard rock and hydraulic mining. The reserves are part of the St. Peter Sandstone deposit that stretches north-south from Minnesota to Missouri and east-west from Illinois to Nebraska and South Dakota. The facility is located approximately 50 miles southwest of St. Louis and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 44.

We acquired the Pacific facility in 1987 by merger with the Pennsylvania Glass Sand Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, grinding, dry screening, classifying and microsizing. In August 2010, we expanded this facility's processing capabilities to include the processing of frac sand. These production techniques allow the Pacific facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Pacific facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, foundry, fillers and extenders and oil and gas proppants. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped either by rail directly by Union Pacific Corporation and through open switching on the same line by BNSF Railway Company or by truck.

### *Berkeley Springs, West Virginia*

Our surface mines at the Berkeley Springs facility use fuel oil and electricity to produce whole grain, ground and fine ground silica and Florisil through hard rock mining. The reserves are part of the Oriskany Sandstone Formation along the Warm Springs Ridge in eastern West Virginia. The facility is located approximately 100 miles northwest of Baltimore and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 70.

## **Table of Contents**

We acquired the Berkeley Springs facility in 1987 by merger with the Pennsylvania Glass Sand Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including primary, secondary and tertiary crushing, grinding, flotation, de-watering, fluid bed drying, mechanical screening and rotary drying processing. These production techniques allow the Berkeley Springs facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications from customers producing specialty epoxies, resins and polymers, geothermal energy equipment and fiberglass. As such, the Berkeley Springs facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products, foundry, chemicals and fillers and extenders. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped by rail by the CSX Corporation or truck.

### *Rockwood, Michigan*

Our surface mines at the Rockwood facility use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain silica. The reserves are part of the Sylvania Formation and are notable for their low iron content, making them particularly valuable to customers producing specialty glass for architectural or alternative energy applications. The facility is located approximately 30 miles southwest of Detroit and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 75.

We acquired the Rockwood facility in 1987 by merger with the Ottawa Silica Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain and ground silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including fluid bed drying, dry screening and classifying. These production techniques allow the Rockwood facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Rockwood facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products, oil and gas proppants and chemicals. During the fourth quarter of 2011, we completed the addition of 250,000 tons of annual frac sand capacity at the Rockwood facility by installing an entirely new processing circuit. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped by rail via the Canadian National Railway or truck.

### *Mapleton Depot, Pennsylvania*

Our surface mines in Mapleton Depot use natural gas, fuel oil and electricity to produce whole grain silica through hard rock mining. The reserves are part of the Oriskany Sandstone Formation deposit in central Pennsylvania. The facility is located approximately 40 miles northwest of Harrisburg and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstates 99, 80 and 76.

We acquired the Mapleton Depot facility in 1987 by merger with the Pennsylvania Glass Sand Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, scalping and a low iron circuit. These production techniques allow the Mapleton Depot facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Mapleton Depot facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, specialty glass, building products and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped either by rail by Norfolk Southern Corporation or by truck.

### *Kosse, Texas*

Our surface mines in Kosse use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain silica and kaolin clay through scraping mining. The reserves are part of the Simsboro member of the Rockdale Formation in central Texas. The facility is located approximately 90 miles south of Dallas and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstates 45 and 35.

## **Table of Contents**

We acquired the Kosse facility in 1987 by merger with the Ottawa Silica Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica and kaolin clay for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including washing, hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, dry screening, centrifuging and spray drying. These production techniques allow the Kosse facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Kosse facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products, fillers and extenders and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bag or bulk and shipped either by rail by Union Pacific Railroad or by truck.

### *Mauricetown, New Jersey*

Our surface mines near the Mauricetown facility use natural gas, fuel oil and electricity, to produce whole grain silica through dredge mining. The reserves are mined from the Maurice River and are similar to those found in the Cohansey, Bridgeton and Cape May deposits. The facility is located approximately 50 miles south of Philadelphia and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 295 and state Highway 55.

We acquired the Mauricetown facility in 1999 from Unimin Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities, including the construction of a new wet processing plant, to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including washing, hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, rotary drying and scalping. These production techniques allow the Mauricetown facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Mauricetown facility services multiple end markets, such as foundry, filtration, building products and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bags or bulk and shipped either by rail by Winchester & Western Railroad or by truck.

### *Columbia, South Carolina*

Our surface mines in Columbia use natural gas, fuel oil and electricity to produce whole grain, ground and fine ground silica through dune mining. The reserves are part of the Tuscaloosa Formation near central South Carolina. The facility is located approximately 10 miles west of Columbia and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstates 26 and 20.

We acquired the Columbia facility in 1987 by merger with the Pennsylvania Glass Sand Corporation, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including hydraulic sizing, fluid bed drying, scalping and grinding. These production techniques allow the Columbia facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Columbia facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products, fillers and extenders, filtration and oil and gas proppants. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is bagged or shipped in bulk either by rail by Norfolk Southern Corporation or by truck.

### *Montpelier, Virginia*

Our surface mine in Montpelier uses fuel oil and electricity to produce aplite through hard rock mining. The reserves are part of igneous rock deposits that are unique to this location. The facility is located approximately 20 miles northwest of Richmond and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstates 64 and 95.

We acquired the Montpelier facility in 1993 from The Feldspar Company, which had historically used the property to produce aplite for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products



## **Table of Contents**

through various processing methods, including hydraulic crushing and sizing, washing, fluid bed drying and grinding. These production techniques allow the Montpelier facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Montpelier facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, building products and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is packaged in bulk and shipped either by rail by Norfolk Southern Corporation or CSX Corporation or by truck.

### *Jackson, Tennessee*

Our surface mines in Jackson use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain, ground and fine ground silica through dredge mining. The reserves are part of the Clairborne Formation, which is part of the Gulf Coastal Plain-Upper Mississippi Embayment. The facility is located approximately 75 miles northeast of Memphis and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 40.

We acquired the Jackson facility in 1997 from Nicks Silica Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain and ground silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities, turning it into one of our premier grinding facilities and enabling it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including rotary drying, screening and grinding.

These production techniques allow the Jackson facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Jackson facility services multiple end markets, such as fiberglass, building products, ceramics, fillers and extenders and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is shipped in bulk by truck.

### *Dubberly, Louisiana*

Our surface mines in Dubberly use natural gas and electricity to produce whole grain silica through dredge mining. The reserves are part of the Sparta deposit. The facility is located approximately 30 miles east of Shreveport and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 20 and state Highway 63.

We acquired the Dubberly facility in 1987 by merger with the Ottawa Silica Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including screening, washing, rotary drying and conditioning to remove heavy and iron bearing minerals. These production techniques allow the Dubberly facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Dubberly facility services multiple end markets, such as glass, foundry and building products. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is bagged or shipped in bulk by truck.

### *Hurtsboro, Alabama*

Our surface mines in Hurtsboro use propane and electricity, to produce whole grain silica. Sand feed for processing is trucked in from surrounding mine locations. The reserves are mined from the Cusseta member of the lower Ripley deposit Formation. The facility is located approximately 75 miles east of Montgomery and is accessible by major highways including U.S. Interstate 85 and state Highway 431.

We acquired the Hurtsboro facility in 1988 from Warrior Sand & Gravel Company, which had historically used the property to produce whole grain silica for customers in industrial and specialty products end markets. Since acquiring the facility, we have renovated and upgraded its production capabilities to enable it to produce multiple products through various processing methods, including trucking in sand from surrounding locations, hydraulic sizing, screening and fluid bed drying. These production techniques allow the Hurtsboro facility to meet a wide variety of focused specifications on product composition from customers. As such, the Hurtsboro

## **Table of Contents**

facility services multiple end markets, such as foundry, building products and recreation. Once the product is appropriately processed, it is shipped in bulk by truck.

### *Rochelle, Illinois*

The Rochelle property was purchased in 2011, and we spent 2011 and 2012 planning and constructing a resin coating facility on the property.

The Rochelle facility has two process lines, each with the capacity to coat 100,000 tons of substrate. The facility has the flexibility to coat numerous substrates using novolac or resole resin technology. Sand can be received and shipped both by truck and rail to help meet customer requirements. One of the competitive strengths of the facility is the capability to ship by the BNSF and Canadian Pacific railroads both being Class I railroads serving many key locations throughout United States.

By the end of 2012, the Rochelle facility produced and qualified resin coated sand that meets standards for the oil and gas market. The facility has the potential to add process lines and service other markets as customer demands evolve and grow.

In the first quarter of 2014, we completed modifications to the Rochelle facility which enable it to function, in part, as a transload as well as being unit train capable. These changes now enable the plant to ship raw sand to multiple destinations across the country.

### *Sparta, Wisconsin*

The Sparta property was acquired on December 30, 2011, and site development began in April 2012. Sand dredging and the wet process plant operations were launched in September 2012, resulting in an initial production of over 150,000 tons of dryer feed stockpile by December 1, 2012. By mid-December 2012, the first of two planned fluid-bed, natural gas dryers and the dry screening circuit was commissioned. These activities culminated in the loading of our first railcar of finished product on December 30, 2012. Phase 2 construction activities began in January 2013, and the facility became fully operational in the second quarter of 2013.

The Sparta deposit contains over 36 million tons of proven ore reserves. The geology is comprised of high purity sands of the Wonewoc Formation. The Wonewoc Sandstone Formation is known for its round, coarse grains and superior crush strength properties, which makes it an ideal substrate for oil and gas proppants. The Sparta property is located 25 miles northeast of La Crosse, WI; approximately 120 miles northwest of Madison, WI; and is readily accessible by both Interstate 90 and the Canadian Pacific railroad. In accordance with the conditional use permit, finished products will only be shipped in bulk by rail.

### *Batesville, Arkansas*

Whitebuck is a sandstone deposit with over 34 million tons of probable reserves near the town of Batesville, Arkansas. We acquired the reserves in 2010 from White Buck, LLC. There is no facility on the property and it is not currently permitted. We received a mine permit in March 2012. The deposit has high purity sandstone and can provide a long-term supplement to the reserves at our Mill Creek operations. The reserves are part of the St. Peter Sandstone deposit, which is part of the same formation being mined at our Ottawa and Pacific operations. The property is located approximately 85 miles northeast of Little Rock and is accessible by highways including state Highways 67 and 167.

## **Our Reserves**

We believe we have a broad and high-quality mineral reserves base due to our strategically located mines and facilities. Reserves are defined by SEC Industry Guide 7 as that part of a mineral deposit which could be

## **Table of Contents**

economically and legally extracted or produced at the time of the reserve determination. Industry Guide 7 divides reserves between proven (measured) reserves and probable (indicated) reserves which are defined as follows:

*Proven (measured) reserves.* Reserves for which (1) quantity is computed from dimensions revealed in outcrops, trenches, workings or drill holes; grade and/or quality are computed from the results of detailed sampling and (2) the sites for inspection, sampling and measurement are spaced so closely and the geologic character is so well defined that size, shape, depth and mineral content of reserves are well-established.

*Probable (indicated) reserves.* Reserves for which quantity and grade and/or quality are computed from information similar to that used for proven (measured) reserves, but the sites for inspection, sampling, and measurement are farther apart or are otherwise less adequately spaced. The degree of assurance, although lower than that for proven (measured) reserves, is high enough to assume continuity between points of observation.

We categorize our reserves as proven or probable in accordance with these SEC definitions. We estimate that we had a total of approximately 297 million tons of proven and probable recoverable mineral reserves as of December 31, 2013. The quantity and nature of the mineral reserves at each of our properties are estimated by our internal geologists and mining engineers. Our internal geologists and engineers update our reserve estimates annually, making necessary adjustments for operations at each location during the year and additions or reductions due to property acquisitions and dispositions, quality adjustments and mine plan updates. Before acquiring new reserves, we perform surveying, drill core analysis and other tests to confirm the quantity and quality of the acquired reserves. In some instances, we acquire the mineral rights to reserves without actually taking ownership of the properties.

### ***Description of Deposits***

The following is a description of the nature of our silica and aplite deposits for each of our reserve locations:

#### ***Ottawa, Illinois***

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) content and grain size distribution. Iron is concentrated near the surface, where orange iron staining is evident and also increases where the bottom contact becomes concentrated in iron pyrite. Maximum average full face iron content is 0.045%. The deposit tends to run a coarser grain size distribution in top half of deposit.

#### ***Mill Creek, Oklahoma***

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) content, calcium (CaO) and grain size distribution. Multiple faces are exposed to average out variability in grain size and iron. The sand/overburden contact is occasionally concentrated in calcium and any sand with greater than 0.30% CaO is removed during the overburden removal process. Sand with iron greater than 0.025% is not mined.

#### ***Pacific, Missouri***

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) and calcium (CaO). Calcium can be concentrated at upper sand contact with overlying carbonate cap rock. This enriched calcium zone is known from drill sample results and is stripped during the overburden removal process. Average full mining face washed sand samples are less than 0.03% iron and 0.05% calcium.

#### ***Berkeley Springs, West Virginia***

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute is iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ). Ore that is higher than 0.06% iron is not mined. Ore less than 0.06% iron is mined and blended for feed to plant.

## **Table of Contents**

### *Mapleton Depot, Pennsylvania*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute is iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ). Ore that is higher than 0.06% iron is not mined. Ore less than 0.06% iron is mined and blended for feed to plant.

### *Kosse, Texas*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron content ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) for kaolin and sand and size distribution for sand. Up to three different pits are mined at any one time to assure consistency of ore and to smooth out variability of attributes. Maximum sand irons are 0.045% and clay irons are 1.05%.

### *Mauricetown, New Jersey*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. There is no critical attribute in the mining of this deposit other than that occasional zones high in clay are avoided in the course of dredge mining.

### *Columbia, South Carolina*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron content ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) and percentage of clay/slimes. Clay content increases at depth and generally the pit bottom follows a marker bed at 250-foot elevation where clay content is in excess of 11%. Sand having iron values greater than 0.03% are avoided and not mined.

### *Montpelier, Virginia*

Montpelier produces alumina sands (aplite) from an anorthosite, which intruded into the Sabot Gneiss, a Precambrian amphibolite. The ore body is characterized as a dome-like structure and comprised of two general phases: a coarse-grained, non-foliated phase and a granulated, medium-grained, foliated phase.

The deposit is variable in its geologic nature and contains masses of host rock (consisting of granite gneiss, biotite gneiss and amphibolites) along with occasional dikes. The deposit is highly weathered and soft near the surface. Hardness and strength increase with depth.

Aplite is used as a flux agent in glass making and is sold to the same glass end markets and used in the same processes and in a similar manner as our silica product.

The aplite ore (andesine feldspar) deposit is intermixed with an assemblage of other minerals that must be separated out to make an acceptable product. The controlling attributes are titanium ( $\text{TiO}_2$ ), aluminum ( $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ ), iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) and phosphorous ( $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ). Ore is blended from multiple faces to produce a product generally at 21%  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ , 0.25%  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ , 0.11%  $\text{TiO}_2$ , and 0.55%  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ .

### *Rockwood, Michigan*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute is iron content ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ). Mineable sand must have less than 0.01%  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ .

### *Jackson, Tennessee*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute of iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) content is managed through keeping clay overburden from intermixing with the sand and maintaining adequate washing of sand in the wet processing of the sand.

## **Table of Contents**

### *Dubberly, Louisiana*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) content and grain size distribution. Mining full-face average for iron is 0.045%. The grain size distribution averages greater than 25% plus 50 mesh. Fine and coarse areas are blended to meet the grain size average.

### *Hurtsboro, Alabama*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute is grain size distribution. Sand reserves are located on the crests of rolling hills and mining occurs from multiple pits and faces within pits to assure optimum grain size distribution is available to meet the market product mix.

### *Sparta, Wisconsin*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attributes are sand grain crush strength and size distribution. A thin layer of silt overlies 50 to 100 foot thick sand deposit. The deposit is unconsolidated, well sorted and falls predominantly within the 20/70 grain size distribution.

### *Batesville, Arkansas*

The deposit has a minimum silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) content of 99%. The controlling attribute is iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) content. The deposit has two horizons; a low iron horizon where sand has less than 0.009%  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$  and a regular iron horizon where sand has greater than 0.009%  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ .

## ***Mineral Rights***

The mineral rights and access to mineral reserves for the majority of our operations are secured through land that is owned in fee. There are no underlying agreements and/or royalties associated with these lands. The operations in this category include: Berkeley Springs, Dubberly, Jackson, Kosse, Mauricetown, Montpelier, Ottawa, Pacific, Batesville, Rockwood and Sparta.

The mineral rights and access to mineral reserves at our Mill Creek operation are a combination of land owned in fee that includes a non-participating royalty payment of \$0.11 per saleable ton that was contractually negotiated with and paid to the original sellers of the property that covers 95% of the reserves and a lease agreement on one property that involves an annual minimum payment of \$50,000 and a production royalty payment of \$0.55 per saleable ton on the remaining 5% of reserves.

The Columbia operation mineral reserves and rights are secured under a long-term mineral lease. The lease expires in 2033 and includes an annual minimum payment of \$175,000 and a production royalty of 5.5% of the gross revenue.

The Hurtsboro operation mineral reserves and rights are secured under two mineral leases. The majority of the reserves are under a long-term lease that expires in 2019 and includes an annual minimum payment of \$8,000 and a production royalty payment of 3% of weighted average selling price. The second mineral lease expires in 2015 and includes an annual minimum payment of \$15,000 and a production royalty of 3.3% of the weighted average selling price, which will escalate to 3.35% on June 1, 2014. The mineral leases have been renewed in the past, and it is expected that if mining is still occurring on this property we will have no problem negotiating an extension of these leases.

The Mapleton Depot operation mineral reserves and rights are secured under two long-term mineral leases that expire in 2025 but may continue thereafter on a year-to-year basis if mining is still occurring. Annual minimums are \$1,000, and production royalty payments are either 6.5% of free on board pit price or 0.255 cents per mined ton, whichever is higher.

**Table of Contents**

None of our operations are on government land and, accordingly, we do not have any mineral rights or associated mining claims.

**Summary of Reserves**

The following table provides information on our 14 production facilities that have reserves, and a currently undeveloped site in Batesville, Arkansas, as of December 31, 2013. Included is the location and area of the facility; the type, amount and ownership status of its reserves; and the primary end markets that it serves. Our facility in Rochelle, IL has no reserves.

Mine/Plant Location	Owned/ Leased	Area (in acres)	Proven Reserves	Probable Reserves (amounts in thousands of tons)	Combined Proven and Probable Reserves	2013 Tons Mined	Primary End Markets Served
Ottawa, IL	Owned	1,781 owned	70,407	40,800	111,207	3,688	Oil and gas proppants, glass, chemicals and foundry
Mill Creek, OK	Owned	2,214 owned 15 mineral lease		17,998	17,998	1,262	Oil and gas proppants, glass, foundry and building products
Pacific, MO	Owned	524 owned	15,940	7,994	23,934	547	Oil gas proppants, glass, foundry and fillers and extenders
Berkeley Springs, WV	Owned	4,435 owned	2,507		2,507	483	Glass, building products and fillers and extenders
Mapleton Depot, PA	Owned/ Leased	1,761 owned 194 mineral lease 98 access lease	4,463	10,000	14,463	635	Glass and building products
Kosse, TX (1)	Owned	960 owned 118 mineral lease	11,882		11,882	384	Glass, building products and fillers and extenders
Mauricetown, NJ	Owned	1,279 owned	12,481		12,481	120	Filtration, foundry and building products
Columbia, SC	Leased	648 lease 204 owned	6,410		6,410	390	Glass, building products and fillers and extenders
Montpelier, VA (2)	Owned	824 owned		13,953	13,953	190	Glass and building products
Rockwood, MI (3)	Owned	872 owned	6,563		6,563		Glass and building products

Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Jackson, TN	Owned	132 owned	406	725	1,131	159	Fiberglass and building products
Dubberly, LA	Owned	356 owned	4,421		4,421	221	Glass, foundry and building products
		25 tailings					
		lease					
Batesville, AR	Owned	477 owned		34,732	34,732		
Hurtsboro, AL	Leased	117 owned	1,059		1,059	158	Foundry and building products
		1,108 mineral					
		lease					
Sparta, WI	Owned	520 owned	31,351	2,740	34,091	2,390	Oil and gas proppants
Total			167,890	128,942	296,832	10,267	

## **Table of Contents**

- (1) Kosse's reserves are comprised of 8,326 tons of silica sand (70%) and 3,556 tons of kaolin clay (30%).
- (2) Montpelier's reserves are comprised entirely of the mineral aplite.
- (3) Rockwood's products were produced from ore sourced from a third party. It did not mine any of its reserves in 2013.

### **ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

In addition to the matter described below, we are subject to various legal proceedings, claims, and governmental inspections, audits or investigations arising out of our business which cover matters such as general commercial, governmental regulations, antitrust and trade regulations, product liability, environmental, intellectual property, employment and other actions. Although the outcomes of these routine claims cannot be predicted with certainty, in the opinion of management, the ultimate resolution of these matters will not have a material adverse effect on our financial position or results of operations.

Prolonged inhalation of excessive levels of respirable crystalline silica dust can result in silicosis, a disease of the lungs. Breathing large amounts of respirable silica dust over time may injure a person's lungs by causing scar tissue to form. Crystalline silica in the form of quartz is a basic component of soil, sand, granite and most other types of rock. Cutting, breaking, crushing, drilling, grinding and abrasive blasting of or with crystalline silica containing materials can produce fine silica dust, the inhalation of which may cause silicosis, lung cancer and possibly other diseases including immune system disorders such as scleroderma. Sources of exposure to respirable crystalline silica dust include sandblasting, foundry manufacturing, crushing and drilling of rock, masonry and concrete work, mining and tunneling, and cement and asphalt pavement manufacturing.

Since at least 1975, we and/or our predecessors have been named as a defendant, usually among many defendants, in numerous lawsuits brought by or on behalf of current or former employees of our customers alleging damages caused by silica exposure. Prior to 2001, the number of silicosis lawsuits filed annually against the commercial silica industry remained relatively stable and was generally below 100, but between 2001 and 2004 the number of silicosis lawsuits filed against the commercial silica industry substantially increased. This increase led to greater scrutiny of the nature of the claims filed, and in June 2005 the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of Texas issued an opinion in the former federal silica multi-district litigation remanding almost all of the 10,000 cases then pending in the multi-district litigation back to the state courts from which they originated for further review and medical qualification, leading to a number of silicosis case dismissals across the United States. In conjunction with this and other favorable court rulings establishing sophisticated user and no duty to warn defenses for silica producers, several states, including Texas, Ohio and Florida, have passed medical criteria legislation that requires proof of actual impairment before a lawsuit can be filed.

As a result of the above developments, the filing rate of new claims against us over the past few years has decreased to below pre-2001 levels, and we were named as a defendant in three, two and three new silicosis cases filed in 2011, 2012 and 2013, respectively. As of February 26, 2014, there were a total of 88 active silica-related products liability claims pending in which we were a defendant and 3,146 inactive claims. Almost all of the claims pending against us arise out of the alleged use of our silica products in foundries or as an abrasive blast media, and involve various other defendants. Prior to the fourth quarter of 2012, we had insurance policies for both our predecessors that cover certain claims for alleged silica exposure for periods prior to certain dates in 1985 and 1986 (with respect to various insurance). As a result of a settlement with a former owner and its insurers in the fourth quarter of 2012, some of these policies are no longer available to us and we will not seek reimbursement for any defense costs or claim payments from these policies. Other insurance policies, however, continue to remain available to us and will continue to make such payments on our behalf.

The silica-related litigation brought against us to date has not resulted in material liability to us. However, we continue to have silica-related products liability claims filed against us, including claims that allege silica exposure for periods for which we do not have insurance coverage. Any such pending or future claims or inadequacies of our insurance coverage could have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation or results



## **Table of Contents**

of operations. For more information regarding silica-related litigation, see [Risk Factors](#) [Risks Related to Our Business](#) [Silica-related health issues](#) and litigation could have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation or results of operations.

### **ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES**

At U.S. Silica, safety is a core value and we strive for excellence in the achievement of a workplace free of injuries and occupational illnesses. Our health and safety leadership team has developed comprehensive safety policies and standards, which include detailed standards and procedures for safe production, addressing topics such as employee training, risk management, workplace inspection, emergency response, accident investigation and program auditing. We place special emphasis on the importance of continuous improvement in occupational health, personal injury avoidance and prevention, emergency preparedness, and property damage elimination. In addition to strong leadership and involvement from all levels of the organization, these programs and procedures form the cornerstone of safety at U.S. Silica, ensuring that employees are provided a safe and healthy environment and are intended as a means to reduce workplace accidents, incidents and losses, comply with all mining-related regulations and provide support for both regulators and the industry to improve mine safety. While we want to have productive operations in full regulatory compliance, we know it is equally essential that we motivate and train our people to think, practice and feel a personal responsibility for health and safety on and off the job.

All of our production facilities are classified as mines and are subject to regulation by the MSHA under the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (the [Mine Act](#) ). MSHA inspects our mines on a regular basis and issues various citations and orders when it believes a violation has occurred under the Mine Act. Following passage of The Mine Improvement and New Emergency Response Act of 2006, MSHA significantly increased the numbers of citations and orders charged against mining operations. The dollar penalties assessed for citations issued has also increased in recent years. Information concerning mine safety violations or other regulatory matters required by Section 1503(a) of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and Item 104 of Regulation S-K (17 CFR 229.104) is included in Exhibit 95.1 to this Annual Report filed on Form 10-K.

**Table of Contents****PART II****ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES****Market Information**

Shares of our common stock, traded under the symbol SLCA, have been publicly traded since February 1, 2012, when our common stock was listed and began trading on the NYSE. Accordingly, no market for our stock existed prior to February 1, 2012.

The following table sets forth for the indicated periods, the high and low sales prices, per share, for our common stock on the NYSE.

	Sales Price	
	High	Low
<i>Fiscal 2013</i>		
First Quarter	\$ 26.53	\$ 16.53
Second Quarter	\$ 23.57	\$ 19.80
Third Quarter	\$ 25.37	\$ 19.63
Fourth Quarter	\$ 35.78	\$ 26.00
<i>Fiscal 2012</i>		
First Quarter	\$ 21.19	\$ 15.50
Second Quarter	\$ 20.55	\$ 9.78
Third Quarter	\$ 14.70	\$ 9.20
Fourth Quarter	\$ 17.00	\$ 12.40

**Holders of Record**

On February 21, 2014, there were 53,551,879 shares of our common stock outstanding, which were held by approximately 16 stockholders of record. Because many of our shares of common stock are held by brokers and other institutions on behalf of stockholders, we are unable to estimate the total number of stockholders represented by these record holders. For additional information related to ownership of our stock by certain beneficial owners and management, refer to Item 12, Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters.

**Dividend**

We pay dividends on our common stock after the Board declares them. Management and the Board remain committed to evaluating additional ways of creating shareholder value. Any determination to pay dividends and other distributions in cash, stock, or property by U.S. Silica in the future will be at the discretion of the Board and will be dependent on then-existing conditions, including our business conditions, our financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital requirements, contractual restrictions including restrictive covenants contained in debt agreements and other factors.

We declared a special dividend of \$0.50 per share in December 2012. In 2013, we declared quarterly dividends as follows:

Dividend declared	Price per common share
April 2013	\$ 0.125
July 2013	\$ 0.125
October 2013	\$ 0.125

**Table of Contents****Purchase of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers**

From time to time, we repurchase our common stock in the open market pursuant to programs approved by the Board. We may repurchase our common stock for a variety of reasons, such as to offset dilution related to equity-based incentives and to optimize our capital structure.

On June 11, 2012, the Board authorized us to repurchase up to \$25.0 million of our common stock. The authorization was initially for a period of 18 months, concluding on December 11, 2013, but on November 4, 2013, the Board extended the repurchase program through December 11, 2014. We are authorized to repurchase, from time to time, shares of our outstanding common stock on the open market or in privately negotiated transactions. Stock repurchases will be funded using our available liquidity. The timing and amount of stock repurchases will depend on a variety of factors, including the market conditions as well as corporate and regulatory considerations. The share repurchase program may be suspended, modified or discontinued at any time and we have no obligation to repurchase any additional amount of our common stock under the program. We intend to make all repurchases in compliance with applicable regulatory guidelines and to administer the plan in accordance with applicable laws, including Rule 10b-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. As part of the program, as of December 31, 2013, we have repurchased 100,000 shares of our common stock at an average price of \$10.72 and are authorized to repurchase up to an additional \$23.9 million of our common stock. As of December 31, 2013, all of the 100,000 shares repurchased to date have been re-issued to satisfy employee option exercises.

We consider several factors in determining when to make share repurchases including, among other things, our cash needs, the availability of funding, our future business plans and the market price of our stock. We expect that cash provided by future operating activities, as well as available liquidity, will be the sources of funding for our share repurchase program. Based on the anticipated amounts to be generated from those sources of funds in relation to the remaining authorization approved by our Board under the June 2012 share repurchase program, we do not expect that future share repurchases will have a material impact on our short-term or long-term liquidity.

The following table presents the total number of shares of our common stock that we purchased during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2013, the average price paid per share, the number of shares that we purchased as part of our publicly announced repurchase program, and the approximate dollar value of shares that still could have been purchased at the end of the applicable fiscal period, pursuant to our June 2012 share repurchase program:

Period	Total Number of Shares Purchased	Average Price Paid Per Share	Total Number of Shares Purchased as Part of Publicly Announced Program(1)	Maximum Dollar Value of Shares that May Yet Be Purchased Under the Program(1)
October 2013	602(2)	\$ 34.82		
November 2013		\$		
December 2013		\$		
Total		\$		\$ 23,928,275

(1) The program covering the repurchase of up to \$25.0 million of our common stock was announced on June 12, 2012. This program expires on December 11, 2014.

(2) Represents shares withheld by U.S. Silica to pay taxes due upon the vesting of employee restricted stock units.

Subsequent to December 31, 2013, we repurchased no additional shares of our common stock. As of February 26, 2014, we have the authorization to repurchase up to \$23.9 million of our common stock under the program.

**Table of Contents****Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans**

The table below contains information about securities authorized for issuance under our 2011 Incentive Compensation Plan (the 2011 Plan). The features of the 2011 Plan are disclosed further in Note M to our consolidated Financial Statements in Part II, Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

	Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights (a)	Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights (b)	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a)(1) (c)
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	1,231,540	\$ 15.01	5,016,112
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders			
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,231,540</b>	<b>\$ 15.01</b>	<b>5,016,112</b>

- (1) The aggregate number of shares of common stock which may be issued under the 2011 Plan is subject to automatic increase on the first day of each fiscal year beginning in 2012 and ending in 2019 by the lesser of (1) 2% of the shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year, or (2) such lesser number of shares as determined by the Compensation and Governance Committee.

**U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. Comparative Stock Performance Graph**

*The information contained in this U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. Comparative Stock Performance Graph section shall not be deemed to be "soliciting material" or "filed" or incorporated by reference in future filings with the SEC, or subject to the liabilities of Section 18 of the Exchange Act, except to the extent that we specifically incorporate it by reference into a document filed under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act.*

The graph below compares the cumulative total shareholder return on our common stock, the cumulative total return on the Russell 3000 Index and the Standard and Poor's SmallCap 600 GICS Oil & Gas Equipment & Services Sub-Industry index since January 31, 2012, the first day our stock traded on the NYSE.

**Table of Contents**

The graph assumes \$100 was invested on January 31, 2012, the first day our stock was traded on the NYSE, in our common stock, the Russell 3000 and the Standard and Poor's SmallCap 600 GICS Oil & Gas Equipment & Services Sub-Industry Index. The cumulative total return assumes the reinvestment of all dividends.

**Table of Contents****ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA**

The following table and discussion sets forth our consolidated statement of operations data for the periods presented. The results of operations by segment are discussed in further detail following this combined overview.

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2013	2012	2011	2010	2009
	(amounts in thousands, excluding per ton figures)				
Statement of Operations Data:					
Sales	\$ 545,985	\$ 441,921	\$ 295,596	\$ 244,953	\$ 191,623
Operating income	111,241	118,988	60,803	45,991	25,614
Income before income taxes	96,017	109,805	37,415	13,721	2,280
Net income	75,256	79,154	30,253	11,392	5,539
Statement of Cash Flows Data:					
Net cash provided by (used in):					
Operating activities	\$ 46,451	\$ 100,950	\$ 42,565	\$ 36,738	\$ 13,863
Investing activities	(135,113)	(104,461)	(66,639)	(15,163)	(13,308)
Financing activities	105,896	5,334	18,773	28,451	(288)
Other Financial Data:					
Capital expenditures	\$ 60,470	\$ 105,719	\$ 66,745	\$ 15,241	\$ 13,350
Operating Data:					
Total tons sold	8,161	7,170	6,289	5,965	5,089
Average realized price (per ton)	\$ 66.90	\$ 61.63	\$ 47.00	\$ 41.07	\$ 37.65
Production costs (per ton)(1)	\$ 42.04	\$ 35.76	\$ 28.81	\$ 26.49	\$ 26.76
Oil & Gas Proppants:					
Sales	\$ 347,439	\$ 243,765	\$ 107,074	\$ 69,556	\$ 35,836
Segment contribution margin(2)	\$ 145,916	\$ 140,070	\$ 67,590	\$ 43,118	\$ 23,515
Industrial and Specialty Products:					
Sales	\$ 198,546	\$ 198,156	\$ 188,522	\$ 175,397	\$ 155,787
Segment contribution margin(2)	\$ 56,983	\$ 53,601	\$ 53,013	\$ 46,031	\$ 37,419
Balance Sheet Data:					
Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments	\$ 153,236	\$ 61,022	\$ 59,199	\$ 64,500	\$ 14,474
Total assets	863,461	686,810	605,796	508,534	463,967
Total long-term debt, including current portion	371,451	255,425	261,789	238,442	179,107
Total liabilities	554,167	455,116	483,862	410,970	336,937
Total stockholders' equity	309,294	231,694	121,934	97,564	127,030

(1) Production costs (per ton) equal cost of goods sold including shipping cost, divided by total tons sold.

(2) In the second quarter of 2011 we changed our segment reporting structure to two segments 1.) Oil & Gas Proppants and 2.) Industrial & Specialty Products, and recast the historical financial statements presented within this report and as required by GAAP. See Note U to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

## **Table of Contents**

### **ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

*The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read together with Item 6, "Selected Financial Data," the description of the business appearing in Item 1, "Business," of this report, and the Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K and the related notes included elsewhere in this report. This discussion contains forward-looking statements as a result of many factors, including those set forth under Item 1, "Business Forward-Looking Statements" and Item 1A, "Risk Factors," and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. These statements are based on current expectations and assumptions that are subject to risks and uncertainties. Actual results could differ materially from those discussed in or implied by forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to these differences include those discussed below and elsewhere in this report, particularly in Item 1A, "Risk Factors."*

Management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations ( "MD&A" ), is organized into the following sections:

*Overview* A general description of our business, our strategic initiatives and the commercial silica industry.

*Results of Operations* An analysis of our consolidated and combined results of operations for the three years presented in our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

*Liquidity and Capital Resources* An analysis of our cash flows, sources and uses of cash, contractual obligations and other items that may impact our financial position.

*Critical Accounting Estimates* A discussion of accounting policies that require critical judgments and estimates.

*Recent Accounting Pronouncements* A summary of accounting pronouncements which have been issued by relevant accounting standards.

In addition to disclosing financial results that are determined in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles, or GAAP, we also use certain non-GAAP financial information, such as:

Segment contribution margin; and

Net income (loss) adjusted to remove interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, impairment, and other special items in order to arrive at Adjusted EBITDA as defined in our new senior secured credit facility.

Segment contribution margin and Adjusted EBITDA are not recognized measures under GAAP and should not be considered alternatives to or superior to expense and profitability measures derived in accordance with GAAP. For a detailed description of the non-GAAP measures used in this MD&A, please see the discussion under "How We Evaluate Our Business" and "Non-GAAP Financial Performance Measures" .

### **Overview**

We are one of the largest domestic producers of commercial silica, a specialized mineral that is a critical input into a variety of attractive end markets. During our 113-year history, we have developed core competencies in mining, processing, logistics and materials science that enable us to produce and cost-effectively deliver over 250 products to customers across these markets. In our largest end market, oil and gas proppants, our frac sand is used to stimulate and maintain the flow of hydrocarbons in oil and natural gas wells. This segment of our business is experiencing rapid growth due to recent technological advances in the hydraulic fracturing process, which have made the extraction of large volumes of oil and natural gas from U.S. shale formations economically feasible. Our silica is also used as an economically irreplaceable raw material in a wide range of industrial applications, including glassmaking and chemical manufacturing. Additionally, in recent years a number of





## **Table of Contents**

attractive new end markets have developed for our high-margin, performance silica products, including high-performance glass, specialty coatings, polymer additives and geothermal energy systems.

As of February 26, 2014, we operate 15 facilities across the United States and control 297 million tons of reserves. We own one of the largest frac sand processing plants in the United States and control approximately 138 million tons of reserves that can be processed to meet American Petroleum Institute (API) frac sand size specifications. Our operations are organized into two segments based on end markets served: (1) Oil & Gas Proppants and (2) Industrial & Specialty Products. Our segments are complementary because our ability to sell to a wide range of customers across end markets allows us to maximize recovery rates in our mining operations, optimize our asset utilization and reduce the cyclical nature of our earnings.

## **Recent Trends and Outlook**

U.S. demand for industrial silica has been growing steadily. According to The Freedonia Group, Inc. ( Freedonia ), demand for industrial silica sand grew at a 4% compound annual growth rate ( CAGR ) from 2001 to 2011. This increase in demand was driven primarily by hydraulic fracturing, which grew at a 27% CAGR from 2001 to 2011, according to the most recent related Freedonia report dated October 2012. More recently, the recovery of the U.S. housing and automotive markets has also positively affected silica related to those markets such as glass, building materials, foundry and fillers and extenders. Trends driving the acceleration in demand include:

*Increased demand in the oil and gas proppants end market.* The increased demand for frac sand has been driven by the growth in the use of hydraulic fracturing as a means to extract hydrocarbons from shale formations. According to the most recent related Freedonia report dated August 2013, domestic proppant producers are expected to experience annual increases in demand of 11% through 2017. We expect continued growth of horizontal drilling. The industry may experience temporary fluctuations in demand and price as the market adjusts to changing supply and demand due to energy pricing fluctuations. We significantly expanded our sales efforts to the frac sand market in 2008 and have since experienced rapid growth in our sales associated with our oil and gas activities.

*Rebound of demand in industrial end markets and continued growth in specialty end markets.* The economic downturn resulting from the financial crisis negatively impacted demand for our products in industrial and specialty products end markets, most notably in the glassmaking, building products, foundry and chemicals end markets. This drop coincided with a similar drop in key economic demand drivers, including housing starts, light vehicle sales, repair and remodel activity and industrial production. To the extent these demand drivers recover to historical levels, which is difficult to predict given current economic uncertainty, we expect to see a corresponding increase in the demand for commercial silica. In addition, to the extent commercial silica products continue to be used in key alternative energy markets, we anticipate continued volume growth in specialty end markets, such as high performance glass and geothermal energy systems as well as the increased use of commercial silica in new applications such as specialty coatings and polymer additives.

## **Our Strategy**

The key drivers of our growth strategy include:

*Expand our oil and gas proppant production capacity and product portfolio.* Beginning in the fourth quarter of 2011, we executed several initiatives to increase our frac sand production capacity and augment our proppant product portfolio. At our Ottawa, Illinois facility, we implemented operating improvements and installed a new dryer and six mineral separators to increase our annual frac sand production capacity by 900,000 tons. At our Rockwood, Michigan facility, we added 250,000 tons of annual frac sand production capacity by installing an entirely new processing circuit. In the first quarter of 2013, our new resin-coated sand facility became fully operational, with capacity to resin coat up to 400 million pounds of sand annually. In the second quarter of 2013, our Sparta, Wisconsin facility

## **Table of Contents**

became fully operational with an annual raw sand production capacity of 1,700,000 tons. Also in 2013, we made an initial investment in a new Greenfield site near Utica, Illinois. When fully operational, we expect this facility to have an annual capacity of approximately 1,500,000 tons of raw frac sand. We expect to take ownership of the mine and plant and have them become fully operational by the end of the second quarter of 2014.

*Increase our presence in industrial and specialty products end markets.* We intend to increase our presence and market share in certain industrial and specialty products end markets that we believe are poised for growth. We will continue to work toward transforming our industrial and specialty product segment from a commodity business to a more value-driven approach by developing capabilities and products that assist in enabling us to increase our presence in larger, more profitable markets.

*Optimize product mix and further develop value-added capabilities to maximize margins.* We continue to actively manage our product mix at each of our plants to ensure we maximize our profit margins. This requires us to use our proprietary expertise in balancing key variables, such as mine geology, processing capacities, transportation availability, customer requirements and pricing. We expect to continue investing in ways to increase the value we provide to our customers by expanding our product offerings, increasing our transportation assets, improving our supply chain management, upgrading our information technology, and creating a world class customer service model.

*Expand our supply chain network and leverage our logistics capabilities to meet our customers' needs in each strategic oil and gas basin.* We continue to expand our transload network to ensure product is available to meet the growing in-basin needs of our customers. This approach allows us to provide strong customer service and puts us in a position to take advantage of opportunistic spot market sales. Our plant sites are strategically located to provide access to all Class I railroads, which enables us to cost effectively send product to each of the strategic basins in North America. We can ship product by truck, barge and rail with an ability to connect to short-line railroads as necessary to meet our customers' evolving in-basin product needs. We believe that our supply chain network and logistics capabilities are a competitive advantage that enables us to provide superior service for our customers. For example, in 2013, we opened our San Antonio, Texas unit-train receiving transload facility, which was built in partnership with BNSF railroad to support the Eagle Ford market. Additionally, we have entered into an agreement with Union Pacific Railroad to build a second transload facility in Odessa, Texas, which is expected to be fully operational by the end of 2014. We will continue to make strategic investments and develop partnerships with transload operators and transportation providers that will enhance our portfolio of supply chain services that we can provide to customers. In 2013, we signed a multi-year agreement with Wildcat Minerals LLC ( "Wildcat" ) which provides us with potential sand storage and rail capacity at 19 of Wildcat's sand storage facilities, located near several major unconventional oil and gas shale basins. With the addition of these new sites, we now have in basin storage capacity at 35 transloads located near all of the major shale basins in the United States.

*Evaluate both Greenfield and Brownfield expansion opportunities and other acquisitions.* We will continue to leverage our reputation, processing capabilities and infrastructure to increase production, as well as explore other opportunities to expand our reserve base. We may accomplish this by developing Greenfield projects, where we can capitalize on our technical knowledge of geology, mining and processing and our strong reputation within local communities. For instance, we are evaluating the potential development of a Greenfield project in Eau Claire County, Wisconsin, which, depending on market conditions, could become operational as early as late 2015 and potentially add 3,000,000 tons of annual frac sand capacity. Additionally, we are continuing to actively pursue acquisitions to grow, taking advantage of our asset footprint, our management's experience with high-growth businesses, and our strong customer relationships. Our primary objective is to acquire assets complementary to our Oil & Gas Proppants segment, with a focus on mining, processing and logistics to further enhance our market presence, some of which assets have differing levels of frac sand quality. We prioritize acquisitions which provide opportunities to realize synergies (and, in some cases, the acquisition will only be accretive assuming synergies), including entering new geographic and frac sand product

## **Table of Contents**

markets, acquiring attractive customer contracts, and improving operations. We are in active discussions to acquire assets fitting this strategy, which, if completed, would be significant under Regulation S-X and would require additional sources of financing. There can be no assurance that we reach a definitive agreement and complete any of these potential transactions. See the risk factors disclosed in Item 1A of Part I, including the risk factor entitled, "If we cannot successfully complete acquisitions or integrate acquired businesses, our growth may be limited and our financial condition may be adversely affected."

*Maintain financial strength and flexibility.* We intend to maintain financial strength and flexibility to enable us to pursue acquisitions and new growth opportunities as they arise. In July 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by replacing our revolving line-of-credit and amending our senior secured term loan facility (the "Term Loan"), increasing the loan amount by \$115 million. As of December 31, 2013, we had \$78.3 million of cash on hand, \$75.0 million in short-term investments and \$41.0 million of availability under our new revolver.

### **How We Generate Our Sales**

We derive our sales by mining and processing minerals that our customers purchase for various uses. Our sales are primarily a function of the price per ton realized and the volumes sold. In some instances, our sales also include a charge for transportation services we provide to our customers. Our transportation revenue fluctuates based on a number of factors, including the volume of product we transport under contract, service agreements with our customers, the mode of transportation utilized and the distance between our plants and customers.

We primarily sell our products under short-term price agreements or at prevailing market rates. For a limited number of customers, we sell under long-term, competitively-bid contracts. As of February 26, 2014, we have five take-or-pay supply agreements with five of our customers in the Oil & Gas Proppants segment with initial terms expiring between 2014 and 2016. These agreements define, among other commitments, the volume of product that our customers must purchase, the volume of product that we must provide and the price that we will charge and that our customers will pay for each product. As discussed in Part I, Item 1A, "Risk Factors" A large portion of our sales is generated by our top customers, and the loss of, or significant reduction in, purchases by our largest customers could adversely affect our operations, these customers may not continue to purchase the same levels of product in the future due to a variety of reasons, contract requirements notwithstanding. Prices under these agreements are generally fixed and subject to upward adjustment in response to certain cost increases. As a result, our realized prices may not grow at rates consistent with broader industry pricing. For example, during periods of rapid price growth, our realized prices may grow more slowly than those of competitors, and during periods of price decline, our realized prices may outperform industry averages. Additionally, at the time the take-or-pay supply agreements were signed, two of these customers provided advance payments for future shipments aggregating \$27.0 million. A percentage of these advance payments was recognized as revenue with each ton of applicable product shipped to the customer. Collectively, sales to customers with supply agreements accounted for 40%, 31% and 17% of our total sales in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Although sales under supply agreements, as opposed to short-term price agreements or at prevailing spot market rates, result in us realizing lower margins than we otherwise might during periods of high market prices, we believe such lower margins are offset by the benefits derived from the product mix and sales volume stability afforded by such supply agreements.

We invoice the majority of our clients on a per shipment basis, although for some larger customers, we consolidate invoices weekly or monthly. The amounts invoiced include the amount charged for the product, transportation costs (if paid by us) and costs for additional services as applicable, such as costs related to transload the product from railcars to trucks for delivery to the customer site.

## **Table of Contents**

### **The Costs of Conducting Our Business**

The principal expenses involved in conducting our business are labor costs, electricity and drying fuel costs, maintenance and repair costs for our mining and processing equipment and facilities and transportation costs. We believe the majority of our operating costs are relatively stable in price, but can vary significantly based on the volume of product produced. We benefit from owning the majority of the mineral deposits that we mine and having long-term mineral rights leases or supply agreements for our other primary sources of raw material, which limit royalty payments.

Operating labor costs represented approximately 11%, 12% and 17% of our sales in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. We employ a mix of union and non-union labor, with 47% of our workforce being unionized as of December 31, 2013. Our union contracts stipulate annual escalation factors for certain wages and benefits.

We incur significant electricity and drying fuel (principally natural gas) costs in connection with the operation of our processing facilities. Energy costs directly related to the production of our products represented 5%, 5% and 8% of our total sales in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

We capitalize the costs of our mining equipment and generally depreciate it over its expected useful life. Depreciation, depletion and amortization costs represented approximately 7%, 6% and 7% of our sales for 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Preventive and remedial repair and maintenance costs that do not involve the replacement of major components of our equipment and facilities are expensed as incurred. These repair and maintenance costs can be significant due to the abrasive nature of our products and represented approximately 4%, 5%, and 6% of our sales in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

Additionally, we incur expenses related to our corporate operations, including costs for the sales and marketing; research and development; finance; legal; and environmental, health and safety functions of our organization. These costs are principally driven by personnel expenses. In total, our selling, general and administrative costs represented approximately 9%, 9% and 8% of sales in 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. As a public company we will continue to incur additional legal, accounting, insurance and other expenses that we had not incurred as a private company, including costs associated with public company reporting requirements. These requirements include compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act as well as other rules implemented by the SEC, and applicable stock exchange rules. Compliance with these rules and regulations substantially increased our legal and financial compliance costs and made certain financial reporting and other activities more time-consuming and costly.

Our effective income tax rate was approximately 22%, 28%, and 19% of pretax earnings in 2013, 2012, and 2011, respectively. Historically, our actual effective tax rates have been lower than the statutory effective rate primarily due to the benefit received from statutory percentage depletion allowances.

### **How We Evaluate Our Business**

Our management team evaluates our business using a variety of financial and operational metrics to analyze our performance. Our business is organized into two segments, Oil & Gas Proppants and Industrial & Specialty Products. We evaluate the performance of these segments based on their volumes sold, average realized price and contribution margin earned. Additionally, we consider a number of factors in evaluating the performance of the business as a whole, including total volumes sold, average realized price, segment contribution margin, and Adjusted EBITDA. We view these metrics as important factors in evaluating our profitability and review these measurements frequently to analyze trends and make decisions.

#### *Segment Contribution Margin*

Segment contribution margin, a non-GAAP measure, is a key metric that management uses to evaluate our operating performance and to determine resource allocation between segments. Segment contribution margin

**Table of Contents**

excludes certain corporate costs not associated with the operations of the segment. These unallocated costs include costs related to corporate functional areas such as sales, production and engineering, corporate purchasing, accounting, treasury, information technology, legal and human resources.

*Adjusted EBITDA*

Adjusted EBITDA, a non-GAAP measure, is included in this report because it is a key metric used by management to assess our operating performance and by our lenders to evaluate our covenant compliance. Our target performance goals under our incentive compensation plan are tied, in part, to our Adjusted EBITDA. In addition, our Revolver now contains a consolidated total net leverage ratio that we must meet as of the last day of any fiscal quarter whenever usage of the Revolver (other than certain undrawn letters of credit) exceeds 25% of the Revolver commitment, which is calculated based on our Adjusted EBITDA. Noncompliance with the financial ratio covenant contained in the Revolver could result in the acceleration of our obligations to repay all amounts outstanding under the Revolver and the Term Loan. Moreover, the Revolver and the Term Loan contained covenants that restricted, subject to certain exceptions, our ability to make permitted acquisitions, incur additional indebtedness, make restricted payments (including dividends) and retain excess cash flow based, in some cases, on our ability to meet leverage ratios calculated based on our Adjusted EBITDA.

**Results of Operations**

	For the Years Ended December 31,			Percent Change	
	2013	2012	2011	13 vs. 12	12 vs. 11
	(amounts in thousands)				
Sales					
Oil & Gas Proppants	\$ 347,439	\$ 243,765	\$ 107,074	42.5%	>100.0%
Industrial & Specialty Products	198,546	198,156	188,522	0.2%	5.1%
Total Sales	\$ 545,985	\$ 441,921	\$ 295,596	23.5%	49.5%

*Sales*

Sales increased \$104.1 million, or 24%, to \$546.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$441.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. Oil & Gas Proppants sales increased by \$103.7 million, accounting for nearly all of the total growth. Overall, average realized price increased 9% and volumes increased 14% from the comparable prior period.

Oil & Gas Proppant sales increased \$103.7 million, or nearly 43%, to \$347.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$243.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. The growth in sales revenue was due to an overall increase in tons of product sold as well as a higher proportion of sales through transloads, where transportation and handling costs are typically passed on to customers. Volume increased 40% driven by year over year growth in the demand for our frac sands. Average product selling price increased 2% due to higher volumes sold through transloads, which includes transportation costs that are typically passed on to the customer.

Industrial & Specialty Products sales increased \$0.4 million, or 0.2%, to \$198.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$198.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. Increases in pricing across all of our end markets and favorable product mix drove a nearly 4% increase in average realized price. Volume decreased by 4%, primarily due to weakness in sales to the glass market.

For the year ended December 31, 2012, sales increased \$146.3 million, or nearly 50%, to \$441.9 million compared to \$295.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. Oil & Gas Proppants sales increased by \$136.7 million while Industrial & Specialty Products sales increased \$9.6 million, driven by overall increases in average realized price and volume of 31% and 14%, respectively.

## **Table of Contents**

Oil & Gas Proppant sales increased \$136.7 million, or nearly 128%, to \$243.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$107.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. The growth was driven by a combination of increases in volume and pricing. Volume increased 45% due to our ability to reallocate certain production from industrial end markets to the oil and gas proppants end market in response to continued growth in hydraulic fracturing activity. Additionally, increases in pricing and a more favorable product mix in the year ended December 31, 2012 contributed to a 56% increase in average realized price.

Industrial & Specialty Products sales increased \$9.6 million, or 5%, to \$198.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$188.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. Increases in pricing across all of our end markets drove a nearly 6% increase in average realized price. Volumes decreased by nearly 0.4%, due to the reallocation of some production away from certain industrial and specialty products end markets to the oil and gas proppants end market.

### *Cost of Goods Sold*

Cost of goods sold increased \$92.1 million, or 36%, to \$348.6 for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$256.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. As a percentage of sales, costs of goods sold increased from 58% for the year ended December 31, 2012 to 64% for the year ended December 31, 2013. Cost of goods sold increased \$75.3 million, or 42%, to \$256.5 for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$181.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. Both increases resulted from more tons sold and from higher transportation costs. Cost of goods sold as a percentage of sales increased due to additional transportation and handling costs driven by increased sales volume through transloads; these costs are typically passed on to customers.

### *Selling, General and Administrative Expenses*

Selling, general and administrative expenses increased \$8.5 million, or 21%, to \$49.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$41.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2012, driven by approximately \$2.4 million of non-recurring expenses related to offerings of our common stock by Golden Gate Capital and business development activities related to our growth and expansion initiatives, \$1.9 million of one-time litigation fees, \$1.3 million related to our refinancing, a \$1.1 million increase in bad debt expense and \$1.0 million of employment agency fees. Additionally, we incurred a \$0.7 million increase in compensation expense related to awards of equity instruments to certain management and employees.

Selling, general and administrative expenses increased \$18.0 million, or 75%, to \$41.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$23.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2011, driven by approximately \$7.0 million of year over year increases in employee compensation and benefits related to headcount increase in our sales and marketing function to support the continued growth in our oil and gas business as well as increases in corporate headcount to support our transformation as a public company. We continue to incur additional public company costs as well as costs related to growth and expansion initiatives, which include legal, audit and accounting, and consulting and advisory services expenses, which have grown nearly \$2.7 million year over year. Additionally, we incurred compensation expense of \$1.1 million related to awards of equity instruments to certain management and employees. As a percentage of sales, selling, general and administrative expenses increased 1.4% year over year.

### *Depreciation, Depletion and Amortization*

Depreciation, depletion and amortization expense was \$36.4 million, \$25.1 million and \$21.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Year over year increases have been driven by continued capital spending associated with our growth and capacity expansion initiatives combined with increased depletion due to additional volume of mined silica sands. We expect depreciation, depletion and amortization expense to continue to grow due to anticipated capital spending in 2014.

## **Table of Contents**

### *Operating Income*

Operating income decreased \$7.8 million, or 7%, to \$111.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$119.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 due to a 36% increase in cost of goods sold and a 30% increase in operating expenses, partially offset by a 24% increase in sales.

Operating income increased \$58.6 million, or 96%, to \$119.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$60.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2011 guided by a 50% increase in sales and an 8% increase in gross margin.

### *Interest Expense*

Interest expense increased \$1.5 million, or 11%, to \$15.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$13.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 due to the increase in long-term debt.

Interest expense decreased \$4.6 million, or 25%, to \$13.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$18.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. This was primarily due to a refinancing of the Term Loan and repayment of a mezzanine loan facility in the second quarter of 2011, as well as the conversion to equity of the \$15.0 million note payable to our former parent in connection with our initial public offering in January 2012. The note had a stated interest rate equal to 10.0%. The refinancing transaction and the conversion of the note payable drove a reduction in the effective interest rate on our debt for the year ended December 31, 2012 to 5.1%, compared to an effective rate of 7.2% for the year ended December 31, 2011.

### *Early Extinguishment of Debt*

On June 8, 2011, the Term Loan was refinanced to increase the principal borrowings, reduce the overall interest rate by 25 basis points and extend the maturity date to June 8, 2017. As a result, we recognized \$6.0 million of expense related to the transaction. These expenses included non-cash charges related to unamortized original issue discounts and debt issuance costs, and payments for lender fees.

On July 23, 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by amending our Term Loan and replacing our existing revolving line-of-credit. The Term Loan amendment refinanced our existing senior debt by entering into a new \$425 million senior secured credit facility, consisting of a \$375 million Term Loan and the \$50 million Revolver that may also be used for swingline loans (up to \$5 million) or letters of credit (up to \$20 million). The Term Loan amendment also, among other things, removed and amended certain financial and other covenants to provide additional operating flexibility, and lowered interest rates on borrowed amounts. The existing revolving line-of-credit was terminated. The Term Loan will expire on July 23, 2020 and the Revolver will expire on July 23, 2018. As a result of refinancing our Term Loan and replacing our revolving line-of-credit, we expensed \$1.8 million of costs, consisting of \$1.3 million related to third party fees in selling, general, and administrative expenses and \$0.5 million related to early extinguishment of debt.

### *Provision for Income Taxes*

The provision for income taxes decreased \$9.9 million, or 32%, to \$20.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2013, compared to \$30.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 due to the decrease in pre-tax income of 13%. The effective tax rates were 21.6% for the year ended December 31, 2013 and 27.9% for the year ended December 31, 2012. Our effective tax rate in 2013 was lower primarily due to the retroactive reinstatement of the federal research and development tax credit. The benefit from the reinstatement of the tax credit was recognized for the 2012 and 2013 tax years during the year ended December 31, 2013.

The provision for income taxes increased \$23.5 million, or 328%, to \$30.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2012, compared to \$7.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2011 due to the increase in pre-tax income of 193%. The effective tax rates were 27.9% for the year ended December 31, 2012 and 19.1% for the year ended December 31, 2011.

**Table of Contents***Net Income/Loss*

Net income was \$75.3 million, \$79.2 million and \$30.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Year over year increases are due to the factors noted above.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources***Overview*

Our principal liquidity requirements have historically been to service our debt, to meet our working capital, capital expenditure and mine development expenditure needs, to return cash to our stockholders, and to finance acquisitions. We have historically met our liquidity and capital investment needs with funds generated through operations. We have historically funded our acquisitions through borrowings under our credit facilities and equity investments. Our working capital is the amount by which current assets exceed current liabilities and is a measure of our ability to pay our liabilities as they become due. As of December 31, 2013, our working capital was \$257.4 million and we had \$41.0 million of availability under the Revolver. See [Credit Facilities](#) Revolver.

We believe that cash generated through operations and our financing arrangements will be sufficient to meet working capital requirements, anticipated capital expenditures, scheduled debt payments for at least the next 12 months and any dividends declared such as the one declared by the Board on October 24, 2013 of \$0.125 per share to common stockholders of record at the close of business on December 16, 2013, and paid on January 3, 2014.

Management and the Board remain committed to evaluating additional ways of creating shareholder value. Any determination to pay dividends and other distributions in cash, stock, or property in the future will be at the discretion of the Board and will be dependent on then-existing conditions, including our business conditions, our financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital requirements, contractual restrictions including restrictive covenants contained in debt agreements, and other factors. Additionally, because we are a holding company, our ability to pay dividends on our common stock may be limited by restrictions on the ability of our subsidiaries to pay dividends or make distributions to us, including restrictions under the terms of the agreements governing our indebtedness.

*Cash Flow Analysis*

A summary of operating, investing and financing activities is shown in the following table:

	2013	As of December 31, 2012 (amounts in thousands)	2011	Percent Change	
				13 vs. 12	12 vs. 11
<b>Net cash provided by (used in):</b>					
Operating activities	\$ 46,451	\$ 100,950	\$ 42,565	(54.0)%	>100.0%
Investing activities	(135,113)	(104,461)	(66,639)	(29.3)%	56.8%
Financing activities	105,896	5,334	18,773	>100%	(71.6)%

*Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities*

Operating activities consist primarily of net income adjusted for non-cash items, including depreciation and amortization, deferred revenue, deferred income taxes, equity-based compensation and the effect of working capital changes.

Net cash provided by operating activities was \$46.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$101.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. This \$54.5 million decrease in cash provided by operations was primarily the result of a federal tax extension payment of \$19.6 million for the 2012 tax year



## **Table of Contents**

paid in March 2013, \$18.1 million in 2013 federal estimated tax payments paid as of December 31, 2013, and increased working capital to support the transloads.

Net cash provided by operating activities was \$101.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 compared to \$42.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. This \$58.4 million increase was primarily the result of a \$72.4 million improvement in earnings before income taxes, offset by a one-time termination fee payment related to an advisory agreement with Golden Gate Capital of \$8.0 million which was accrued at December 31, 2011 and made during the first quarter of 2012 and the net build in working capital year over year of \$13.5 million. Several non-cash adjustments during the year ended December 31, 2012 and 2011, including a \$6.0 million loss related to the early extinguishment of debt in 2011, netted to a \$6.9 million impact on cash flows for each period presented.

### *Net Cash Used in Investing Activities*

Investing activities consist primarily of capital expenditures for growth and maintenance.

Net cash used in investing activities was \$135.1 million in the year ended December 31, 2013. This use of cash is due to capital expenditures, which totaled \$60.5 million, as well as \$75.0 million used for the purchase of short-term investments during the year ended December 31, 2013. Capital expenditures in 2013 were made for the engineering, procurement and construction of our two Greenfield raw sand plants in Sparta, Wisconsin, and Utica, Illinois, for the purchase of an existing silica sand processing facility from Quality Sand Products LLC (QSP) in Peru, Illinois, for the construction of our transloads, and for maintenance capital.

Net cash used in investing activities was 104.5 million in the year ended December 31, 2012. This use of cash is due to capital expenditures which totaled \$105.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2012, partially offset by proceeds of \$1.3 million received from the sale of a building and various equipment. Capital expenditures in 2012 have been primarily for the construction of our resin coating production facility in Rochelle, Illinois and the engineering, procurement, and construction of a Greenfield raw sand plant in Sparta, Wisconsin.

Net cash used in investing activities was \$66.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2011. This use of cash is due to capital expenditures which totaled \$66.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2011 and included the acquisition of land in Sparta, Wisconsin for \$8.0 million and the investment in our Ottawa and Rockwood facilities of \$38.2 million and \$8.7 million, respectively, for the expansion of our production capacity which we finalized during the fourth quarter of 2011. These two projects at our Ottawa and Rockwood facilities increased annual production capacity of frac sand by 900,000 tons and 250,000 tons, respectively.

Management anticipates that our capital expenditures in 2014 will be approximately \$80 million, which is primarily associated with growth and maintenance capital including the construction of the mine and processing facility in Utica, Illinois, the potential development of a Greenfield project in Eau Claire County, Wisconsin and the construction of a transload facility in Odessa, Texas.

### *Net Cash Provided by (Used in) Financing Activities*

Financing activities consist primarily of equity issuances, capital contributions, borrowings and repayments related to the Revolver and Term Loan, as well as fees and expenses paid in connection with our credit facilities and outstanding checks to our vendors.

Net cash provided by financing activities was \$105.9 million in the year ended December 31, 2013. During the period, we had an increase in borrowings under our refinanced Term Loan of \$373.8 million, \$7.9 million of proceeds from options exercised and \$1.4 million in excess tax benefit from equity-based compensation, which was offset by a \$258.0 million repayment of our existing long-term debt, \$13.3 million in dividends paid and \$4.1 million in financing fees. Net cash provided by financing activities was \$5.3 million in the year ended

## **Table of Contents**

December 31, 2012. During the period, dividends of \$26.5 million were paid to stockholders, we paid \$1.1 million to repurchase stock, we made scheduled principal payments on our Term Loan of \$2.6 million, and our short-term debt of \$3.9 million was paid in full.

On January 31, 2012, we completed an initial public offering of 2,941,176 shares of our common stock at an offering price of \$17.00 per share for aggregate proceeds of approximately \$50.0 million (the "IPO"). We received net proceeds of approximately \$40.8 million, after deducting \$3.5 million of underwriting discounts and commissions and offering expenses of \$5.7 million.

Simultaneously with the IPO, GGC Holdings, our parent and sole stockholder prior to the IPO and now largest stockholder, contributed to us all of the stock of its wholly-owned subsidiary, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc., whose operating subsidiary is Coated Sand Solutions, LLC. Prior to this transaction, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. had a \$15.0 million note payable to GGC Holdings, which, together with accrued interest of \$1.7 million, was converted to an equity contribution by GGC Holdings, simultaneously to the IPO.

Net cash provided by financing activities in 2011 was \$18.8 million. During the period, net outstanding debt increased \$22.5 million and included an increase in the Term Loan of \$95.6 million with \$75.0 million of those proceeds used to repay the entire amount outstanding on the mezzanine loan facility as well as new borrowings of \$4.0 million related to the acquisition of the land in Sparta, Wisconsin. We incurred financing fees of \$4.1 million and a prepayment penalty of \$1.5 million in connection with this refinancing.

### ***Share Repurchase Program***

On June 11, 2012, the Board authorized us to repurchase up to \$25.0 million of our common stock. The authorization was initially for a period of 18 months, concluding on December 11, 2013, but on November 4, 2013, the Board extended the repurchase program through December 11, 2014. We are authorized to repurchase, from time to time, shares of our outstanding common stock on the open market or in privately negotiated transactions. Stock repurchases will be funded using our available liquidity. The timing and amount of stock repurchases will depend on a variety of factors, including the market conditions as well as corporate and regulatory considerations. The share repurchase program may be suspended, modified or discontinued at any time and we have no obligation to repurchase any additional amount of our common stock under the program. We intend to make all repurchases in compliance with applicable regulatory guidelines and to administer the plan in accordance with applicable laws, including Rule 10b-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. As part of the program, as of December 31, 2013, we have repurchased 100,000 shares of our common stock at an average price of \$10.72 and are authorized to repurchase up to an additional \$23.9 million of our common stock. As of December 31, 2013, all of the 100,000 shares repurchased to date have been re-issued to satisfy employee option exercises.

### ***Credit Facilities***

#### ***Revolver***

On August 9, 2007, we entered into the Revolver with various banks and other financial institutions as lenders thereunder and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association (successor by merger to Wachovia Bank, National Association) as administrative agent and lender.

On January 31, 2012, the Revolver was amended and restated to reduce the covenants and restrictions on our activities. The Revolver, as amended, contained customary covenants and restrictions on our activities related to, among other things: the incurrence of additional indebtedness; liens; dividends and distributions; investments, acquisitions and speculative transactions; contingent obligations; transactions with affiliates; fundamental changes to our business, property and assets; insurance; sale lease-backs; the ability to change the nature of our business, our fiscal year and our accounting policies; the ability to amend or waive any of the terms of any permitted subordinated debt, the Term Loan and our organizational documents; designations of senior debt other than the Revolver obligations and the Term Loan obligations; and the performance of material contracts,

## **Table of Contents**

including intellectual property licenses. The Revolver also required that we maintain (a) during any fiscal quarter, if excess availability fell below \$6.5 million, a fixed charge coverage ratio of not less than 1.10 to 1.00 until excess availability was equal to or greater than \$10.0 million and (b) aggregate excess availability of not less than \$5.0 million at all times.

On December 31, 2012, we again amended our Revolver. The primary revisions to the Revolver included an increase of the commitment under the Agreement from \$35 million to \$50 million, and the letter of credit sublimit from \$15 million to \$20 million; provided, however, that the aggregate principal amount of the loans and letters of credit obligations outstanding at any one time did not exceed the borrowing base as calculated pursuant to the Agreement. The amendment also extended the termination date of the Revolver from October 31, 2015 to October 31, 2016, reduced prices and fees on borrowings, letters of credit and unused commitments and added an additional subsidiary, Coated Sand Solutions, as a co-borrower.

On July 23, 2013, in connection with the refinancing discussed below, we terminated our existing revolving line-of-credit and replaced it with a \$50 million new revolving line-of-credit ( Revolver ) that may also be used for swingline loans (up to \$5 million) or letters of credit (up to \$20 million). The Revolver will expire on July 23, 2018. As of December 31, 2013, \$9.0 million is being used for outstanding letters of credit, leaving \$41.0 million of borrowing availability under the Revolver.

On January 29, 2014, Travelers Casualty and Surety Company of America released a letter of credit it previously held as collateral for surety bonds in the amount of \$4.4 million. A corresponding amount of liquidity, therefore, became available under the Revolver as of that date.

Borrowings under the Revolver are subject to the accuracy of representations and warranties in all material respects and the absence of any defaults under the Revolver and the Term Loan.

### *Term Loan*

On November 25, 2008, in connection with our acquisition by an affiliate of Golden Gate Capital, we entered into the Term Loan with various banks and other financial institutions as lenders thereunder and BNP Paribas, as administrative agent. On May 7, 2010, the Term Loan was amended and restated to, among other things, (1) increase the aggregate principal amount available thereunder from \$102.0 million to \$165.0 million and (2) add an incremental term loan facility in the maximum aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million.

On June 8, 2011, the Term Loan was again amended and restated to, among other things, (1) further increase the aggregate principal amount available thereunder to \$260.0 million and (2) increase the maximum aggregate principal amount under the incremental term loan facility to \$50.0 million (or \$100.0 million if the total leverage ratio on a pro forma basis would not exceed 3x).

On January 31, 2012, we again amended and restated the Term Loan to reduce the covenants and restrictions on our activities. The Term Loan, as amended, contained customary covenants and restrictions on our activities related to, among other things: the incurrence of additional indebtedness; liens and negative pledges; dividends and distributions; investments and acquisitions; contingent obligations; transactions with stockholders (holders of at least 10% of the equity securities) and affiliates; fundamental changes to our business, property and assets; sale lease-backs; the ability to change the nature of our business, our fiscal year and our accounting policies; the ability to amend or waive any of the terms of the Revolver and other material agreements; designations of senior debt other than the Term Loan obligations and the Revolver obligations; and the performance of material contracts, including real property leases and intellectual property licenses.

### *Refinancing*

On July 23, 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by amending our Term Loan. The Term Loan amendment refinanced our existing senior debt by entering into a new \$425 million senior secured credit

**Table of Contents**

facility, consisting of a \$375 million Term Loan and the new \$50 million Revolver discussed above. The Term Loan amendment also, among other things, removed and amended certain financial and other covenants to provide additional operating flexibility, and lowered interest rates on borrowed amounts. The Term Loan will expire on July 23, 2020. A portion of the Term Loan proceeds were used to repay our existing \$255 million term loan and amounts outstanding under the existing Revolver and to pay for fees and expenses associated with the refinancing. The additional proceeds available from the Term Loan are available for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions, dividends, and other general corporate purposes.

**Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are likely to have a current or future material effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, sales, expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources.

**Contractual Obligations**

As described in Note I to our Consolidated Financial Statements, on July 23, 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by amending our Term Loan and replacing our existing revolving line-of-credit. As of December 31, 2013, debt increased by \$116.1 million to \$371.5 million compared to \$255.4 million at December 31, 2012. The increase was mainly due to principal repayments of the existing Term Loan of \$258.0 million, offset by the refinancing of the senior secured credit facility of \$373.8 million.

As of December 31, 2013, the total of our future contractual cash commitments, including the repayment of our debt obligations under the Term Loan, is summarized as follows:

	Total	Less than 1 year	1-3 years	3-5 years	More than 5 years
	(amounts in thousands)				
Principal payments on long-term debt obligations <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 373,125	\$ 3,750	\$ 7,500	\$ 7,500	\$ 354,375
Estimated interest payments on long-term debt	94,857	14,869	29,287	28,688	22,013
Retirement plans	42,262	6,073	11,512	8,645	16,032
Operating lease obligations <sup>(2)</sup>	135,428	23,722	41,641	33,940	36,125
Other long-term liabilities <sup>(3)</sup>	1,988	216	409	402	961
<b>Total Contractual Cash Obligations<sup>(4)(5)</sup></b>	<b>\$ 647,660</b>	<b>\$ 48,630</b>	<b>\$ 90,349</b>	<b>\$ 79,175</b>	<b>\$ 429,506</b>

<sup>(1)</sup> As of December 31, 2013, we had \$371.5 million, net of unamortized original issue discount, outstanding under the Term Loan. The above table excludes the unamortized original issue discount. See Liquidity and Capital Resources Credit Facilities.

<sup>(2)</sup> We are obligated under certain operating leases for railroad cars, mining properties, mining and processing equipment, office space, transportation and other equipment. Certain of our operating lease arrangements include options to purchase the equipment for fair market value at the end of the original lease term. Annual operating lease commitments are presented in more detail in Note N to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

<sup>(3)</sup> Other long-term obligations include estimated future minimum royalty payments provided for under our mineral leases.

<sup>(4)</sup> The above table excludes discounted asset retirement obligations in the amount of \$9.4 million at December 31, 2013, the majority of which have a settlement date beyond 2025.

<sup>(5)</sup> We have indemnified underwriters for surety bonds issued on our behalf and are a contingent guarantor on a railcar lease, both of which are excluded from this table. See Note R to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Environmental Matters**

We are subject to various federal, state and local laws and regulations governing, among other things, hazardous materials, air and water emissions, environmental contamination and reclamation and the protection of the environment and natural resources. We have made, and expect to make in the future, expenditures to comply with such laws and regulations, but cannot predict the full amount of such future expenditures. We may also from time to time incur fines and penalties associated with noncompliance with such laws and regulations. In particular, on September 8, 2011 we voluntarily disclosed potential violations of air emission permits at our Rockwood, Michigan facility to the EPA and the Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, and while no proceedings have been instituted at this time by either agency we could incur penalties or be subject to other requirements in the future as a result of such potential violations. As of December 31, 2013, we had \$9.4 million accrued for future reclamation costs, as compared to \$6.7 million as of December 31, 2012.

We discuss certain environmental matters relating to our various production and other facilities, certain regulatory requirements relating to human exposure to crystalline silica and our mining activity and how such matters may affect our business in the future under Item 1, Business, Item 1A, Risk Factors and Item 3, Legal Proceedings.

### **Non-GAAP Financial Performance Measures**

#### ***Segment Contribution Margin***

Oil & Gas Proppants contribution margin increased \$5.8 million, or 4%, to \$145.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$140.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2012. For the year ended December 31, 2012, contribution margin increased \$72.5 million, or 107.2% to \$140.1 million compared to \$67.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2011. Both increases were due to the following specific factors: increased sales due to an increase in tons of product sold driven by continued year over year growth in demand for our frac sands and natural proppants; offset by a softer pricing environment for some frac sand grades; also offset by increased cost of goods sold as a percentage of sales due to additional transportation and handling costs driven by increased sales through transloads (these costs are typically passed onto customers).

Industrial & Specialty Products contribution margin increased \$3.4 million, or 6%, to \$57.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2013 compared to \$53.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2012 due to increased sales of higher value products, partially offset by a marginal decline in sales volume due to weakness in the glass market. For the year ended December 31, 2012, contribution margin increased \$0.6 million, or 1.1% to \$53.6 million compared to \$53.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2011 due to increased sales of higher value products, partially offset by a marginal decline in sales volume due to the reallocation of some production away from certain industrial and specialty products end markets to the oil and gas proppants end market.

For more detail on the reconciliation of segment contribution margin to its most directly comparable GAAP financial measure, income (loss) before income taxes, see Note U to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

#### ***Adjusted EBITDA***

Adjusted EBITDA is not a measure of our financial performance or liquidity under GAAP and should not be considered as an alternative to net income as a measure of operating performance, cash flows from operating activities as a measure of liquidity or any other performance measure derived in accordance with GAAP. Additionally, Adjusted EBITDA is not intended to be a measure of free cash flow for management's discretionary use, as it does not consider certain cash requirements such as interest payments, tax payments and debt service requirements. Adjusted EBITDA contains certain other limitations, including the failure to reflect our cash expenditures, cash requirements for working capital needs and cash costs to replace assets being

## Table of Contents

depreciated and amortized, and excludes certain non-recurring charges. Management compensates for these limitations by relying primarily on our GAAP results and by using Adjusted EBITDA only supplementally. Our measure of Adjusted EBITDA is not necessarily comparable to other similarly titled captions of other companies due to potential inconsistencies in the methods of calculation.

The following table sets forth a reconciliation of net income, the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure, to Adjusted EBITDA.

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2013	2012	2011
	(amount in thousands)		
Net income	\$ 75,256	\$ 79,154	\$ 30,253
Total interest expense, net of interest income	15,241	13,615	18,347
Provision for taxes	20,761	30,651	7,162
Total depreciation, depletion and amortization expenses	36,418	25,099	20,999
EBITDA	147,676	148,519	76,761
Non-cash deductions, losses and charges <sup>(1)</sup>	464	379	(526)
Non-recurring expenses (income) <sup>(2)</sup>	(189)	(4,206)	(2,028)
Early extinguishment of debt <sup>(3)</sup>	480		6,043
Permitted management fees and expenses <sup>(4)</sup>			9,250
Non-cash incentive compensation <sup>(5)</sup>	3,039	2,330	1,237
Post-employment expenses (excluding service costs) <sup>(6)</sup>	2,071	1,794	1,689
Other adjustments allowable under our existing credit agreements <sup>(7)</sup>	7,150	1,773	1,131
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 160,691	\$ 150,589	\$ 93,557

(1) Includes non-cash deductions, losses and charges arising from adjustments to estimates of a future litigation liability and the decision by our hourly workforce at our Rockwood facility to withdraw from a pension plan administered by a third party.

(2) Includes the gain on insurance settlements of \$0, \$(3,734), and \$(2,028) for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. Includes the gain on sale of assets of \$(189), \$(472) and \$0 for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

(3) Includes natural gas hedging losses, purchase accounting adjustments, management bonuses and other expenses related to the Golden Gate Capital acquisition, as well as unamortized transaction fees and expenses arising from the refinancing of our Term Loan and Revolver.

(4) Includes fees and expense paid to Golden Gate Capital for ongoing consulting and management services provided pursuant to an Advisory Agreement entered into in connection with the Golden Gate Capital acquisition; this Advisory Agreement was terminated in connection with our IPO.

(5) Includes vesting of incentive equity compensation issued to our employees.

(6) Includes net pension cost and net post-retirement cost relating to pension and other post-retirement benefit obligations during the applicable period, but in each case excluding the service cost relating to benefits earned during such period. See Note R to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

(7) Reflects miscellaneous adjustments permitted under our existing credit agreements, including such items as expenses related to offerings of our common stock by Golden Gate Capital, business development activities related to our growth and expansion initiatives, one-time litigation fees, expenses related to our refinancing and employment agency fees.

## Critical Accounting Policies

Our discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations are based upon our consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally

## **Table of Contents**

acceptable in the United States of America. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the dates of the financial statements and the reported revenues and expenses during the reporting periods. We evaluate these estimates and assumptions on an ongoing basis and base our estimates on historical experience, current conditions and various other assumptions that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances. The results of these estimates form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities as well as identifying and assessing the accounting treatment with respect to commitments and contingencies. Our actual results may materially differ from these estimates.

A summary of our significant accounting policies is included in Note B to the Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Management believes that the application of these policies on a consistent basis enables us to provide the users of the Consolidated Financial Statements with useful and reliable information about our operating results and financial condition.

Listed below are the accounting policies we believe are critical to our financial statements due to the degree of uncertainty regarding the estimates or assumptions involved, and that we believe are critical to the understanding of our operations.

### ***Impairment of Long-Lived Assets***

We periodically evaluate whether current events or circumstances indicate that the carrying value of our long-lived assets, including goodwill and other intangible assets, to be held and used may not be recoverable. If such circumstances are determined to exist, an estimate of future cash flows produced by the long-lived assets, or the appropriate grouping of assets, is compared to the carrying value to determine whether an impairment exists. If an asset is determined to be impaired, the loss is measured based on quoted market prices in active markets, if available. If quoted market prices are not available, the estimate of fair value is based on various valuation techniques, including a discounted value of estimated future cash flows. A detailed determination of the fair value may be carried forward from one year to the next if certain criteria have been met. We report an asset to be disposed of at the lower of its carrying value or its estimated net realizable value.

Factors we generally consider important in our evaluation and that could trigger an impairment review of the carrying value of long-lived assets include significant underperformance relative to expected operating trends, significant changes in the way assets are used, underutilization of our tangible assets, discontinuance of certain products by us or by our customers, a decrease in estimated mineral reserves, and significant negative industry or economic trends.

The recoverability of the carrying value of our mineral properties is dependent upon the successful development, start-up and commercial production of our mineral deposit and the related processing facilities. Our evaluation of mineral properties for potential impairment primarily includes assessing the existence or availability of required permits and evaluating changes in our mineral reserves, or the underlying estimates and assumptions, including estimated production costs. Assessing the economic feasibility requires certain estimates, including the prices of products to be produced and processing recovery rates, as well as operating and capital costs.

Although we believe the carrying values of our long-lived assets were realizable as of the relevant balance sheet date, future events could cause us to conclude otherwise.

### ***Mine Reclamation Costs***

We recognize the fair value of any liability for conditional asset retirement obligations, including environmental remediation liabilities when incurred, which is generally upon acquisition, construction or development and/or through the normal operation of the asset, if sufficient information exists to reasonably estimate the fair value of the liability. These obligations generally include the estimated net future costs of

## **Table of Contents**

dismantling, restoring and reclaiming operating mines and related mine sites, in accordance with federal, state and local regulatory requirements. The liability is accreted over time through periodic charges to earnings. In addition, the asset retirement cost is capitalized as part of the asset's carrying value and amortized over the life of the related asset. Reclamation costs are periodically adjusted to reflect changes in the estimated present value resulting from the passage of time and revisions to the estimates of either the timing or amount of the reclamation and abandonment costs. The reclamation obligation is based on when spending for an existing environmental disturbance will occur. If the asset retirement obligation is settled for other than the carrying amount of the liability, a gain or loss is recognized on settlement. We review, on an annual basis, unless otherwise deemed necessary, the reclamation obligation at each mine site in accordance with ASC guidance for accounting reclamation obligations.

Future remediation costs for inactive mines are accrued based on management's best estimate at the end of each period of the costs expected to be incurred at a site. Such cost estimates include, where applicable, ongoing care, maintenance and monitoring costs. Changes in estimates at inactive mines are reflected in earnings in the period an estimate is revised.

### ***Self-Insurance and Product Liability Claim Reserves***

We are self-insured for various levels of employee health insurance coverage, workers' compensation and third party product liability claims alleging occupational disease. We purchase insurance coverage for claim amounts which exceed our self-insured retentions. Depending on the type of insurance, these self-insured retentions range from \$100,000 to \$500,000 per occurrence.

Our insurance reserves are accrued based on estimates of the ultimate cost of claims expected to occur during the covered period. These estimates are prepared with the assistance of outside actuaries and consultants. Our actuaries periodically review the volume and amount of claims activity, and based upon their findings, we adjust our insurance reserves accordingly. The ultimate cost of claims for a covered period may differ from our original estimates.

### ***Employee Benefit Plans***

We provide a range of benefits to our employees and retired employees, including pensions and post-retirement healthcare and life insurance benefits. We record annual amounts relating to these plans based on calculations specified by generally accepted accounting principles, which include various actuarial assumptions, including discount rates, assumed rates of returns, compensation increases, turnover rates and healthcare cost trend rates. We review the actuarial assumptions on an annual basis and make modifications to the assumptions based on current rates and trends when it is deemed appropriate to do so. As required by U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, the effect of the modifications is generally recorded or amortized over future periods. We believe that the assumptions utilized in recording our obligations under the plans, which are presented in Note Q to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, are reasonable based on advice from our actuaries and information as to assumptions used by other employers.

### ***Equity-Based Awards***

In July 2011, we adopted the U.S Silica Holdings, Inc. 2011 Incentive Compensation Plan which provides for grants of stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock and other incentive-based awards.

We account for equity-based awards in accordance with applicable guidance, which establishes standards of accounting for transactions in which an entity exchanges its equity instruments for goods or services. Equity-based compensation expense is recorded based upon the fair value of the award at grant date. Such costs are recognized as expense on a straight-line basis over the corresponding vesting period. In calculating the compensation expense for options granted, we have estimated the fair value of each grant issued through December 31, 2013 using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The fair value of stock options granted have



## Table of Contents

been calculated based on the stock price on the date of the option grant, the exercise price of the option and the following assumptions, which are evaluated and revised, as necessary, to reflect market conditions and experience. These assumptions are the weighted-average of the assumptions used for all grants which occurred during the respective fiscal year.

The following table illustrates the assumptions used in the Black-Scholes pricing model for options granted during the respective fiscal year:

	2013	
Risk-free interest rate	1.03	1.31%
Expected volatility		45%
Expected term	6.25	years
Expected dividend yield		0%
Expected forfeiture yield		0%

**Risk-free interest rate** This is an interpolated rate from the U.S. constant maturity treasury rate for a term corresponding to the expected term, as described below. An increase in the risk-free rate will increase compensation expense.

**Expected volatility** This is a measure of the amount by which the price of various comparable companies' common stock has fluctuated or is expected to fluctuate, as our common stock has not been publicly-traded for an adequate period of time. The comparable companies were selected by analyzing public companies in the industry based on various factors including, but not limited to, company size, financial data availability, active trading volume, and capital structure. An increase in the expected volatility will increase compensation expense.

**Expected term** This is the period of time over which the options are expected to remain outstanding. An increase in the expected term will increase compensation expense. The computation of the expected term is based on the simplified method as our stock options are standard options and we have little recent history of exercise data. Under the simplified method, the expected term is presumed to be the mid-point between the average vesting date and the end of the contractual term.

Since January 31, 2012, the date of our initial public offering, we declared a special dividend of \$0.50 per share on December 10, 2012 and three quarterly dividends of \$0.125 per share during 2013. Options issued in 2013 all occurred early in the year before dividends were consistently declared. As a result, the dividend yield assumptions for those and all prior options issued was 0.00%. We will continue to evaluate this assumption as we develop a dividend history and new options are issued.

Our expected forfeiture rate is the estimated percentage of options granted that are expected to be forfeited or cancelled on an annual basis before becoming fully vested. We have assumed that there will be no forfeitures due to the fact that we do not have adequate historical forfeiture data on which to base the assumption.

The application of a valuation model involves assumptions that are judgmental and highly sensitive in the valuation of incentive awards, which affects compensation expense related to these awards. We will continue to use judgment in evaluating the risk-free interest rate, expected volatility and lives related to our equity-based compensation on a prospective basis and incorporating these factors into our pricing model.

## Taxes

Deferred taxes are provided on the liability method whereby deferred tax assets are recognized for deductible temporary differences and operating loss and tax credit carry-forwards and deferred tax liabilities are recognized for taxable temporary differences. This approach requires recognition of deferred tax liabilities and assets for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been included in the financial statements or tax returns. Under this method, deferred tax liabilities and assets are determined based upon the difference

## **Table of Contents**

between the financial statement and tax basis of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which the expenses are expected to reverse. Valuation allowances are provided if, based on the weight of available evidence, it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

We recognize a tax benefit associated with an uncertain tax position when, in our judgment, it is more likely than not that the position will be sustained upon examination by a taxing authority. For a tax position that meets the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold, we initially and subsequently measure the tax benefit as the largest amount that it judges to have a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement with a taxing authority. The liability associated with unrecognized tax benefits is adjusted periodically due to changing circumstances, such as the progress of tax audits, case law developments and new or emerging legislation. Such adjustments are recognized entirely in the period in which they are identified. The effective tax rate includes the net impact of changes in the liability for unrecognized tax benefits and subsequent adjustments as considered appropriate by management. At the adoption date, we applied the uncertain tax position guidance to all tax positions for which the statute of limitations remained open. The adoption of this guidance did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

We evaluate quarterly the realizability of our deferred tax assets by assessing the need for a valuation allowance and by adjusting the amount of such allowance, if necessary. The factors used to assess the likelihood of realization are our forecast of future taxable income and available tax planning strategies that could be implemented to realize the net deferred tax assets. Failure to achieve forecasted taxable income might affect the ultimate realization of the net deferred tax assets. Factors that may affect our ability to achieve sufficient forecasted taxable income include, but are not limited to, the following: a decline in sales or margins, increased competition or loss of market share. In addition, we operate within multiple taxing jurisdictions and are subject to audit in these jurisdictions. These audits can involve complex issues, which may require an extended time to resolve. We believe that adequate provisions for income taxes have been made for all years.

The largest permanent item in computing both our effective tax rate and taxable income is the deduction allowed for statutory depletion. The impact of statutory depletion on the effective tax rate is presented in Note Q to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. The deduction for statutory depletion does not necessarily change proportionately to changes in income before income taxes.

## **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

New accounting guidance that we have recently adopted, as well as accounting guidance that has been recently issued but not yet adopted by us, are included in Note B to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

## **ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

We are exposed to certain market risks, which exist as a part of our ongoing business operations. We use derivative financial and commodity instruments, where appropriate, to manage these risks. As a matter of policy, we do not engage in trading or speculative transactions. Refer to Note M to our Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K for further information on our derivative financial and commodity instruments.

### ***Interest Rate Risk***

We may use interest rate derivatives in the normal course of our business to manage both our interest cost and the risks associated with changing interest rates. These hedge agreements are used to exchange the difference between fixed and variable-rate interest amounts to an agreed-upon notional principal amount. We do not use derivative financial instruments for trading or speculative purposes. By their nature, all such instruments involve risk, including the possibility that a loss may occur from the failure of another party to perform according to the terms of a contract (credit risk) or the possibility that future changes in market price may make a financial

**Table of Contents**

instrument less valuable or more onerous (market risk). As is customary for these types of instruments, we do not require collateral or other security from other parties to these instruments. In management's opinion, there is no significant risk of loss in the event of nonperformance of the counterparties to these financial instruments.

The estimated fair value of our derivative assets (interest rate caps) are recorded at each reporting period and are based upon widely accepted valuation techniques, including discounted cash flow analysis on the expected cash flows of each derivative contract. This analysis reflects the contractual terms of the derivatives, including the period to maturity, and uses observable market-based inputs, including interest rate curves and implied volatilities. We also incorporate credit valuation adjustments to appropriately reflect both our nonperformance risk as well as that of the respective counterparty in the fair value measurements.

Although we have determined that the majority of the inputs used to value our derivatives fall within Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy, the credit valuation adjustments associated with our derivatives utilize Level 3 inputs, such as estimates of current credit spreads to evaluate the likelihood of default by us and our counterparties. However, as of December 31, 2013, we have assessed that the impact of the credit valuation adjustments on the overall valuation of our derivative positions is not significant. As a result, we have determined that our derivative valuations in their entirety are classified in Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy.

	December 31, 2013				December 31, 2012		
	Maturity Date	Contract/Notional Amount	Carrying Amount	Fair Value	Contract/Notional Amount	Carrying Amount	Fair Value
Interest rate cap agreement <sup>(1)</sup>	2013	\$	\$	\$	\$ 130 million	\$	\$
Interest rate cap agreement <sup>(1)</sup>	2016	\$ 188 million	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$

<sup>(1)</sup> Agreements limit the LIBOR floating interest rate base to 4%.

We have designated these contracts as qualified cash flow hedges. Accordingly, the effective portion of the gain or loss on the derivative instrument is reported as a component of other comprehensive income and recognized in earnings in the same period or periods during which the hedged transaction affects earnings. We had no ineffective contracts as of December 31, 2013.

Assuming that LIBOR is greater than the 1.0% minimum base rate on the Term Loan, a hypothetical increase or decrease in interest rates by 1.0% would have changed our interest expense by \$0.9, \$0.8 and \$1.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

**Market Risk**

We are exposed to various market risks, including changes in interest rates. Market risk related to interest rates is the potential loss arising from adverse changes in interest rates. We do not believe that inflation has a material impact on our financial position or results of operations during periods covered by the financial statements included in this prospectus.

**Credit Risk**

We are subject to risks of loss resulting from nonpayment or nonperformance by our customers. We examine the creditworthiness of third-party customers to whom we extend credit and manage our exposure to credit risk through credit analysis, credit approval, credit limits and monitoring procedures, and for certain transactions, we may request letters of credit, prepayments or guarantees, although collateral is generally not required.

**Table of Contents**

**ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA**

The following Consolidated Financial Statements are filed as part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K:

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

<u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	82
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2013 and 2012</u>	83
<u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	84
<u>Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	85
<u>Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	86
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	87
<u>Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	88

**Table of Contents**

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Board of Directors and Shareholders

U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. (a Delaware corporation) and subsidiaries (the Company) as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, and the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income, stockholders equity, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2013. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. and subsidiaries as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2013 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2013, based on criteria established in the 1992 *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO), and our report dated February 26, 2014 expressed an unqualified opinion.

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

Baltimore, Maryland

February 26, 2014

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

	December 31,	
	2013	2012
	(in thousands)	
ASSETS		
Current Assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 78,256	\$ 61,022
Short-term investments	74,980	
Accounts receivable, net	75,207	59,564
Inventories, net	64,212	39,835
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	11,104	6,738
Deferred income taxes, net	17,737	10,108
Total current assets	321,496	177,267
Property, plant and mine development, net	442,116	414,218
Debt issuance costs, net	5,255	2,111
Goodwill	68,403	68,403
Trade names	10,436	10,436
Customer relationships, net	6,120	6,531
Other assets	9,635	7,844
Total assets	\$ 863,461	\$ 686,810
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current Liabilities:		
Book overdraft	\$ 4,659	\$ 5,390
Accounts payable	37,376	37,333
Dividends payable	6,709	
Accrued liabilities	10,823	9,481
Accrued interest	41	2
Current portion of long-term debt	3,488	2,433
Income tax payable	1,037	20,596
Current portion of deferred revenue		4,855
Total current liabilities	64,133	80,090
Long-term debt	367,963	252,992
Liability for pension and other post-retirement benefits	36,802	52,747
Deferred income taxes, net	71,318	59,111
Other long-term obligations	13,951	10,176
Total liabilities	554,167	455,116
Stockholders' Equity:		
Common stock	534	529
Preferred stock		
Additional paid-in capital	174,799	163,579
Retained earnings	137,978	82,731
Treasury stock, at cost		(970)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(4,017)	(14,175)

# Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Total stockholders' equity	309,294	231,694
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	\$ 863,461	\$ 686,810

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.*

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS**

	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
	<b>(in thousands, except per share amounts)</b>		
Sales	\$ 545,985	\$ 441,921	\$ 295,596
Cost of goods sold (excluding depreciation, depletion and amortization)	348,567	256,535	181,196
Operating expenses			
Selling, general and administrative	49,759	41,299	23,348
Advisory fees to parent			9,250
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	36,418	25,099	20,999
	86,177	66,398	53,597
Operating income	111,241	118,988	60,803
Other (expense) income			
Interest expense	(15,341)	(13,795)	(18,407)
Early extinguishment of debt	(480)		(6,043)
Other income, net, including interest income	597	4,612	1,062
	(15,224)	(9,183)	(23,388)
Income before income taxes	96,017	109,805	37,415
Income tax expense	(20,761)	(30,651)	(7,162)
Net income	\$ 75,256	\$ 79,154	\$ 30,253
Earnings per share:			
Basic	\$ 1.42	\$ 1.50	\$ 0.61
Diluted	\$ 1.41	\$ 1.50	\$ 0.61

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.*



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME**

	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
	<b>(in thousands)</b>		
Net income	\$ 75,256	\$ 79,154	\$ 30,253
Other comprehensive income:			
Unrealized gain (loss) on derivatives (net of tax of \$66, \$144 and \$78 for 2013, 2012, and 2011, respectively)	103	227	123
Unrealized gain (loss) on investments (net of tax of \$(17), \$0 and \$0 for 2013, 2012, and 2011, respectively)	(27)		
Pension and other post-retirement benefits liability adjustment (net of tax of \$6,419, \$(1,299) and \$(4,627) for 2013, 2012, and 2011, respectively)	10,082	(2,041)	(7,244)
Comprehensive income	\$ 85,414	\$ 77,340	\$ 23,132

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.*

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY**

	<b>Common Stock</b>	<b>Treasury Stock</b>	<b>Additional Paid-In Capital</b>	<b>Retained Earnings (Deficit)</b>	<b>Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)</b>	<b>Total Stockholders Equity</b>
Balance at December 31, 2010	\$ 500	\$	\$ 102,519	\$ (215)	\$ (5,240)	\$ 97,564
Net income				30,253		30,253
Unrealized gain (loss) on derivatives					123	123
Minimum pension liability					(7,244)	(7,244)
Equity-based compensation			1,238			1,238
Balance at December 31, 2011	\$ 500	\$	\$ 103,757	\$ 30,038	\$ (12,361)	\$ 121,934
Net income				79,154		79,154
Unrealized gain (loss) on derivatives					227	227
Minimum pension liability					(2,041)	(2,041)
Cash dividend declared (\$0.50 per share of common stock)				(26,461)		(26,461)
Equity-based compensation			2,330			2,330
Issuance of common stock (January 2012 initial public offering at \$17.00 per share, net of issuance costs of \$9,171)	29		40,800			40,829
Issuance of treasury stock		102				102
Repurchase of common stock		(1,072)				(1,072)
Capital contributed by parent			16,692			16,692
Balance at December 31, 2012	\$ 529	\$ (970)	\$ 163,579	\$ 82,731	\$ (14,175)	\$ 231,694
Net income				75,256		75,256
Unrealized gain (loss) on derivatives					103	103
Unrealized gain (loss) on short-term investments					(27)	(27)
Cash dividends declared (\$0.375 per share of common stock)				(20,009)		(20,009)
Equity-based compensation			3,039			3,039
Excess tax benefit from equity-based compensation			1,380			1,380
Minimum pension liability					10,082	10,082
Proceeds from options exercised	5	1,136	6,801			7,942
Shares withheld for employee taxes related to vested restricted stock units		(166)				(166)
Balance at December 31, 2013	\$ 534	\$	\$ 174,799	\$ 137,978	\$ (4,017)	\$ 309,294

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.*

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2013	2012	2011
	(in thousands)		
Operating activities:			
Net income	\$ 75,256	\$ 79,154	\$ 30,253
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	36,418	25,099	20,999
Debt issuance amortization	680	515	265
Original issue discount amortization	209	168	157
Early extinguishment of debt	480		6,043
Deferred income taxes	4,578	1,095	(659)
(Gain)/loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment	(162)	(472)	(35)
Deferred revenue	(4,855)	(7,666)	(7,068)
Equity-based compensation	3,039	2,330	1,238
Excess tax benefit from equity-based compensation	(1,380)		
Other	(5,757)	2,148	4,029
Changes in assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(16,965)	(13,239)	(16,437)
Inventories	(24,377)	(10,528)	(6,889)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(4,532)	1,823	(5,370)
Income taxes	(18,179)	24,491	(1,745)
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	1,385	8,458	25,388
Advisory services termination fee to Golden Gate Capital		(8,000)	
Accrued interest	39	(1,657)	1,558
Liability for pension and other post-retirement benefits	574	(2,769)	(9,162)
Net cash provided by operating activities	46,451	100,950	42,565
Investing activities:			
Capital expenditures	(60,470)	(105,719)	(66,745)
Purchase of short-term investments	(75,000)		
Proceeds from sale of property, plant and equipment	357	1,258	106
Net cash used in investing activities	(135,113)	(104,461)	(66,639)
Financing activities:			
Proceeds from issuance of common stock in initial public offering		50,000	
Dividends paid	(13,300)	(26,461)	
Repurchase of common stock		(1,072)	
Issuance of treasury stock		102	
Proceeds from options exercised	7,942		
Excess tax benefit from equity-based compensation	1,380		
Tax payments related to shares withheld for vested restricted stock units	(166)		
Issuance of long-term debt	373,792		259,061
Issuance of short-term debt			3,932
Repayment of long-term debt	(257,976)	(2,600)	(240,476)
Repayment of short-term debt		(3,932)	
Change in book overdraft	(731)	(198)	1,861
Prepayment penalties	(250)		(1,500)
Principal payments on capital lease obligations	(744)		
Financing fees	(4,051)	(1,334)	(4,105)
Common stock issuance costs		(9,171)	
Net cash provided by financing activities	105,896	5,334	18,773

Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	17,234	1,823	(5,301)
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period</b>	<b>61,022</b>	<b>59,199</b>	<b>64,500</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of period</b>	<b>\$ 78,256</b>	<b>\$ 61,022</b>	<b>\$ 59,199</b>

**Non-cash financing activities:**

Contribution of note from parent and related accrued interest	\$	\$ 16,692	\$
Capital lease obligations incurred to acquire assets	\$ 744	\$	\$

**Supplemental cash flow information:**

Cash paid during the period for:

Interest	\$ 14,716	\$ 12,436	\$ 18,404
Taxes	\$ 40,760	\$ 3,883	\$ 6,915

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.*

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

**NOTE A ORGANIZATION**

U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. ( Holdings, and together with its subsidiaries we, us or the Company ), formerly GGC USS Holdings, Inc., was organized as a holding company on November 14, 2008. On November 25, 2008, we acquired Hourglass Acquisitions I, LLC, whose only operating subsidiary was U.S. Silica Company ( U.S. Silica ).

On November 25, 2008, we issued 1,000 shares of our common stock to our then sole stockholder, GGC USS Holdings, LLC ( GGC Holdings ), for an aggregate purchase price of \$10.00. The shares were issued in reliance on Section 4(2) of the Securities Act because the sale of the securities did not involve a public offering. Appropriate legends were affixed to the securities issued in this transaction. On July 8, 2011, our Board of Directors approved, and we subsequently filed, an Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation which, among other things, increased the authorized shares of common stock to 100 million shares. The Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation also created a 50,000-for-one split of our common stock. All of our common stock share and per share data contained in the financial statements has been retroactively adjusted to reflect this stock split for all periods presented.

On January 31, 2012, the Certificate of Incorporation was amended and restated to increase the authorized shares of common stock to 500 million shares, and to authorize 10 million shares of preferred stock.

On January 31, 2012, we completed an initial public offering of common stock (the IPO ) through a Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-175636), pursuant to which we registered and issued 2,941,176 shares of our common stock, and we registered and certain of our stockholders sold 8,823,529 shares of common stock at an offering price of \$17.00 per share. On February 6, 2012, we issued all 2,941,176 shares of common stock for an aggregate offering price of approximately \$50.0 million and the selling stockholders sold all 8,823,529 shares of common stock for an aggregate offering price of approximately \$150.0 million. As a result of the offering, we received net proceeds of approximately \$40.8 million, after deducting \$3.5 million of underwriting discounts and commissions and offering expenses of \$5.7 million.

On January 31, 2012, simultaneously with the initial public offering of our common stock, GGC Holdings, our sole stockholder prior to the IPO, contributed to us all of the stock of its wholly-owned subsidiary, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc., and its operating subsidiary, Coated Sand Solutions, LLC. Prior to this transaction, GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. had a \$15.0 million note payable to GGC Holdings which, together with accrued interest of \$1.7 million, was converted to an equity contribution by GGC Holdings, simultaneously with the IPO. Coated Sand Solutions develops resin-coated sand proppants for sale into the oil and gas proppants market for use in the hydraulic fracturing process and into the foundry market.

As of December 31, 2013, GGC USS Holdings, LLC held no interest in U.S. Silica after divesting its ownership interest in U.S. Silica during 2013.

**NOTE B SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

***Basis of Presentation and Consolidation***

The consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 2013 and 2012 and for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 (the Financial Statements ), present our financial position, results of operations, and cash flows. In our opinion, our Financial Statements reflect all normal and recurring adjustments necessary to present fairly our financial position as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, the results of our operations

---

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, and our cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. We have reclassified certain immaterial amounts in the prior years consolidated statement of cash flows within operating activities to conform to the current year presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on previously reported net cash flows from operations.

In order to make this report easier to read, we refer throughout to (i) our Consolidated Balance Sheets as our Balance Sheets, (ii) our Consolidated Statements of Operations as our Income Statements, and (iii) our Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows as our Cash Flows.

The Financial Statements include the accounts of Holdings and its direct and indirect wholly-owned subsidiaries and GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. (formed in 2010). In consideration of the contribution of GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. to us on January 31, 2012, we and our subsidiaries are presented on a consolidated basis with GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. as of and for the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012. For the year ended December 31, 2011, we and our subsidiaries are presented on a combined basis with GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in combination.

We follow FASB Accounting Standards Codification ( ASC ) guidance for identification and reporting of entities over which control is achieved through means other than voting rights. The guidance defines such entities as Variable Interest Entities ( VIEs ). As of December 31, 2013 and for the periods presented herein, we have identified no entities over which we maintain any level of control that would qualify for consolidation under ASC guidance.

***Use of Estimates and Assumptions***

The Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles ( GAAP ). The preparation of the Financial Statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the Financial Statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. The more significant areas requiring the use of management estimates and assumptions relate to mineral reserves that are the basis for future cash flow estimates utilized in impairment calculations and units-of-production amortization calculations; environmental, reclamation and closure obligations; estimates of recoverable minerals; estimates of fair value for certain reporting units and asset impairments (including impairments of goodwill and other long-lived assets); write-downs of inventory to net realizable value; equity-based compensation expense; post-employment, post-retirement and other employee benefit liabilities; valuation allowances for deferred tax assets; reserves for contingencies and litigation; and the fair value and accounting treatment of financial instruments including derivative instruments. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances. Accordingly, actual results may differ significantly from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

***Revenue Recognition***

Revenue is recognized from a sale when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the price is determinable, the product has been delivered or legal title has been transferred to the customer and collection of the sales price is reasonably assured. Amounts received from customers in advance of revenue recognition are deferred as liabilities.

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

We derive our sales by mining and processing minerals that our customers purchase for various uses. Our sales are primarily a function of the price per ton realized and the volumes sold. In some instances, our sales also include a charge for transportation services we provide to our customers. Our transportation revenue fluctuates based on a number of factors, including the volume of product we transport under contract, service agreements with our customers, the mode of transportation utilized and the distance between our plants and customers.

We primarily sell our products under short-term price agreements or at prevailing market rates. For a limited number of customers, we sell under long-term, competitively-bid supply agreements. For the year ended December 31, 2013, we had take-or-pay supply agreements with seven of our customers in the oil & gas proppants segment with initial terms expiring between 2013 and 2016. These agreements define, among other commitments, the volume of product that our customers must purchase, the volume of product that it must provide and the price that it will charge and that our customers will pay for each product. Prices under these agreements are generally fixed and subject to upward adjustment in response to certain cost increases. As a result, our realized prices may not grow at rates consistent with broader industry pricing. For example, during periods of rapid price growth, our realized prices may grow more slowly than those of competitors, and during periods of price decline, our realized prices may outperform industry averages.

We invoice the majority of our clients on a per shipment basis, although for some larger customers, we consolidate invoices weekly or monthly. Standard terms are net 30 days, although extended terms are offered in competitive situations. The amounts invoiced include the amount charged for the product, transportation costs (if paid by us) and costs for additional services as applicable, such as costs related to transload the product from railcars to trucks for delivery to the customer site.

***Cash and Cash Equivalents***

Cash and cash equivalents consist of all highly liquid investments with a maturity of three months or less when purchased. Because of the short maturity of these investments, the carrying amounts approximate their fair value. Cash and cash equivalents are invested primarily in money market securities with high quality institutions. Accounts at each institution are insured by Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. Cash balances at times may exceed federally-insured limits. We have not experienced any losses in such accounts and believe we are not exposed to any significant credit risk on cash.

***Accounts Receivable***

The majority of our accounts receivable are due from companies in the glass, oil and natural gas drilling, building products, filler and extenders, foundries and other major industries. Credit is extended based on evaluation of a customer's financial condition and, generally, collateral is not required. Accounts receivable are generally due within 30 days and are stated at amounts due from customers net of an allowance for doubtful accounts. Accounts outstanding longer than the payment terms are considered past due. We determine our allowance by considering a number of factors, including the length of time trade accounts receivable are past due, our previous loss history, the customer's current ability to pay its obligation to us, and the condition of the general economy and the industry as a whole. We write-off accounts receivable when they are deemed uncollectible, and payments subsequently received on such receivables are credited to the allowance for doubtful accounts.

Our ten largest customers accounted for approximately 52%, 37% and 44% of sales in the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. No single individual customer accounted for more than 10% of

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

sales in the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. Management believes it maintains adequate reserves for potential credit losses; ongoing credit evaluations are performed and collateral is generally not required.

***Inventories***

Inventories include raw stockpiles and silica and other industrial sand available for shipment, as well as spare parts and supplies for routine facilities maintenance. We value inventory at the lower of cost or market. Cost is determined using the first-in, first-out and average cost methods.

***Property, Plant and Mine Development***

***Property and equipment***

Property and equipment is recorded at cost and depreciated over their estimated useful lives. Interest incurred during construction of facilities is capitalized and depreciated over the life of the asset. Depreciable properties, mining properties, and mineral deposits acquired in connection with business acquisitions are recorded at fair market value as of the date of acquisition.

Costs for normal repairs and maintenance that do not extend economic life or improve service potential are expensed as incurred. Costs of improvements that extend economic life or improve service potential are capitalized and depreciated over the estimated remaining useful life.

Depreciation is recorded using the straight-line method over the assets' estimated useful life as follows: buildings (15 years); land improvements (10 years); machinery & equipment, including computer equipment and software (3-10 years); furniture & fixtures (8 years). Leasehold improvements are depreciated over the shorter of the asset life or lease term. Construction-in-progress is primarily comprised of machinery and equipment, which has not yet been placed in service.

Gains on the sale of assets are included in income when the assets are disposed of provided there is more than reasonable certainty of the collectability of the sales price and any future activities required to be performed by us relating to the disposal of the assets are complete or insignificant. Upon retirement or disposal of assets, all costs and related accumulated depreciation or amortization are written-off.

Depletion and amortization of mineral deposits are recorded as the minerals are extracted, based on units of production and engineering estimates of mineable reserves. The impact of revisions to reserve estimates is recognized on a prospective basis.

We evaluate the carrying value of our property and equipment if impairment evaluation triggering events occur. If it is determined that the current net book value is in excess of the fair value, the excess of the net book value over the estimated fair value is recorded in our consolidated statements of operations as impairment loss. Fair value is generally estimated using valuation techniques that consider the discounted cash flows of the asset at rates deemed reasonable for the type of asset and prevailing market conditions, appraisals, including recent similar transactions in the market and if appropriate and available, current estimated net sales proceeds from pending offers.

We will classify an asset as held for sale when we have committed to a plan to sell the asset, the sale of the asset is probable within one year, and actions to complete the sale are unlikely to change or that the sale will be



**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

withdrawn. Accordingly, we typically classify assets as held for sale when our Board of Directors has approved the sale, a binding agreement to purchase the property has been signed under which the buyer has committed a significant amount of nonrefundable cash and no significant financing contingencies exist which could prevent the transaction from being completed in a timely manner. If these criteria are met, we will record an impairment loss if the fair value, less cost to sell, is lower than the carrying amount of the asset and will cease recording depreciation. We will classify the loss, together with the related operating results, including related interest expense on any debt assumed by the buyer or that is required to be repaid as a result of the sale, as discontinued operations on our consolidated statement of operations, presuming that we will not have continuing involvement with the property or asset after the sale, and classify the asset and related liability as held for sale on our consolidated balance sheet. Gains on sales of assets are recognized at the time of sale or deferred and recognized as income in subsequent periods as conditions requiring deferral are satisfied or expire without further cost to us.

*Mine exploration and development*

Mine exploration and development costs include engineering and mineral studies, drilling and other related costs to delineate an ore body, and the removal of overburden to initially expose an ore body for production. Costs incurred before mineralization are classified as proven and probable reserves are expensed and classified as exploration or advanced projects, research and development expense. Capitalization of mine development project costs, that meet the definition of an asset, begins once mineralization is classified as proven and probable reserves.

Drilling and related costs are capitalized for an ore body where proven and probable reserves exist and the activities are directed at obtaining additional information on the ore body or converting non-reserve mineralization to proven and probable reserves and the benefit is expected to be realized over a period beyond one year. All other drilling and related costs are expensed as incurred. Drilling costs incurred during the production phase for operational ore control are allocated to inventory costs and then included as a component of costs applicable to sales.

The cost of removing overburden and waste materials to access the ore body at an open pit mine prior to the production phase are referred to as pre-stripping costs. Pre-stripping costs are capitalized during the development of an open pit mine. Where multiple open pits exist at a mining complex utilizing common processing facilities, pre-stripping costs are capitalized at each pit. The removal, production, and sale of de minimis saleable materials may occur during development and are recorded as other income, net of incremental mining and processing costs.

The production phase of an open pit mine commences when saleable minerals, beyond a de minimis amount, are produced. Stripping costs incurred during the production phase of a mine are variable production costs that are included as a component of inventory to be recognized in costs applicable to sales in the same period as the revenue from the sale of inventory. Our definition of a mine and the mine's production phase may differ from that of other companies in the mining industry resulting in incomparable allocations of stripping costs to deferred mine development and production costs. Other mining companies may expense pre-stripping costs associated with subsequent pits within a mining complex.

Mine development costs are amortized using the units-of-production method based on estimated recoverable tons in proven and probable reserves. To the extent that these costs benefit an entire ore body, they are amortized over the estimated life of the ore body. Costs incurred to access specific ore blocks or areas that only provide benefit over the life of that area are amortized over the estimated life of that specific ore block or area.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)***Mine reclamation costs*

We recognize the fair value of any liability for conditional asset retirement obligations, including environmental remediation liabilities when incurred, which is generally upon acquisition, construction or development and/or through the normal operation of the asset, if sufficient information exists to reasonably estimate the fair value of the liability. These obligations generally include the estimated net future costs of dismantling, restoring and reclaiming operating mines and related mine sites, in accordance with federal, state and local regulatory requirements. The liability is accreted over time through periodic charges to earnings. In addition, the asset retirement cost is capitalized as part of the asset's carrying value and amortized over the life of the related asset. Reclamation costs are periodically adjusted to reflect changes in the estimated present value resulting from the passage of time and revisions to the estimates of either the timing or amount of the reclamation and abandonment costs. The reclamation obligation is based on when spending for an existing environmental disturbance will occur. If the asset retirement obligation is settled for other than the carrying amount of the liability, a gain or loss is recognized on settlement. We review, on an annual basis, unless otherwise deemed necessary, the reclamation obligation at each mine site in accordance with ASC guidance for accounting reclamation obligations.

Future remediation costs for inactive mines are accrued based on management's best estimate at the end of each period of the costs expected to be incurred at a site. Such cost estimates include, where applicable, ongoing care, maintenance and monitoring costs. Changes in estimates at inactive mines are reflected in earnings in the period an estimate is revised.

In connection with our annual review of our reclamation obligations in 2013, we have determined that some of our estimates required revision due primarily to the addition of our new transload facility in San Antonio, Texas and to other changes in cost estimates and settlement dates at numerous sites. These changes in estimates resulted in the addition of \$2.3 million of reclamation obligations in 2013.

We reported a liability of \$9.4 million and \$6.7 million in other long-term obligations related to this obligation as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively. Changes in the asset retirement obligation are as follows:

	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Beginning balance	\$ 6,659	\$ 9,504
Payments		
Accretion	456	658
Revisions of prior estimates	2,263	(3,503)
Ending balance	\$ 9,378	\$ 6,659

*Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets and Related Impairment*

Our intangible assets consist of goodwill, which is not being amortized; indefinite lived intangibles, which consist of certain trade names that are not subject to amortization; and customer relationships, which are being amortized on a straight-line basis over their useful life of 20 years. Goodwill represents the excess of purchase price over the fair value of net assets from the business acquisition in 2008.

Goodwill and other intangible assets with indefinite lives are reviewed for impairment annually as of October 31 or more frequently whenever events or circumstances change that would more likely than not reduce

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

the fair value of those assets. Prior to conducting a formal impairment test, we assess qualitative factors to determine whether the existence of events or circumstances leads to a determination that is more likely than not (more than 50%) that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount. Such qualitative factors may include the following: macroeconomic conditions; industry and market considerations; cost factors; overall financial performance; and other relevant entity-specific events.

If the qualitative assessment determines that an impairment is more likely than not, then the impairment test for goodwill, or other intangible assets with indefinite lives, requires a comparison of the fair value with the carrying amount, including goodwill. If this comparison reflects impairment, then the loss would be measured as the excess of recorded goodwill, or other intangible assets with indefinite lives, over its implied fair value. Implied fair value is the excess of our fair value over the fair value of all recognized and unrecognized assets and liabilities.

The evaluation of goodwill, or other intangible assets with indefinite lives, for possible impairment includes estimating our fair value using discounted cash flows and multiples of cash earnings valuation techniques, plus valuation comparisons to similar businesses. These valuations require us to make estimates and assumptions regarding future operating results, cash flows, changes in working capital and capital expenditures, selling prices, profitability, and the cost of capital. Although we believe that the estimates and assumptions used were reasonable, actual results could differ from those estimates and assumptions. As of December 31, 2013 our qualitative assessment did not indicate that it was more likely than not that an impairment had occurred.

As of December 31, 2013, the gross carrying amount of the customer relationships intangible asset was \$8.2 million with accumulated amortization of \$2.1 million. We review all finite-lived intangible assets for impairment when circumstances indicate that their carrying amounts may not be recoverable. We evaluate the carrying value of all finite-lived intangible assets for impairment by comparing the expected undiscounted future cash flows of the asset to the net book value of the asset. If the expected undiscounted future cash flows are less than the net book value of the assets, the excess of the net book value over the estimated fair value is recorded in our consolidated statements of operations as impairment loss. Fair value is generally estimated using valuation techniques that consider the discounted cash flows of the asset at rates deemed reasonable for the type of asset and prevailing market conditions, replacement cost, appraisals, including recent similar transactions in the market and if appropriate, current estimated net sales proceeds from pending offers. As of December 31, 2013, the remaining useful life of our customer relationships was 14.9 years. The estimated annual amortization in each of the next five years is \$411.

***Debt Issuance Costs***

Debt issuance costs consist of loan origination costs, which are being amortized using the effective interest method over the term of the related debt principal. Amortization included in interest expense was \$680, \$515 and \$265 for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

***Transportation Revenue and Expense***

Transportation revenue is the revenue we receive from charging our customers to deliver product to their locations. Revenue is recognized from a sale when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the price is determinable, the product has been delivered or legal title has been transferred to the customer and collection of the sales price is reasonably assured. Transportation expense is the cost we pay to ship product from our production facilities to customer facilities.

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

***Environmental Costs***

Environmental costs, other than qualifying capital expenditures, are accrued at the time the exposure becomes known and costs can be reasonably estimated. Costs are accrued based upon management's estimates of all direct costs, after taking into account expected reimbursement by third parties (primarily the sellers of acquired businesses), and are reviewed by outside consultants. Environmental costs are charged to expense unless a settlement with an indemnifying party has been reached.

***Self-Insurance***

We are self-insured for various levels of employee health insurance coverage, workers' compensation and third party product liability claims alleging occupational disease. We purchase insurance coverage for claim amounts which exceed our self-insured retentions. Depending on the type of insurance, these self-insured retentions range from \$100,000 to \$500,000 per occurrence.

Our insurance reserves are accrued based on estimates of the ultimate cost of claims expected to occur during the covered period. These estimates are prepared with the assistance of outside actuaries and consultants. Our actuaries periodically review the volume and amount of claims activity, and based upon their findings, we adjust our insurance reserves accordingly. The ultimate cost of claims for a covered period may differ from our original estimates.

The current portion of our self-insurance reserves is included in accrued liabilities and the non-current portion is included in other long-term obligations in our consolidated balance sheets. Our self-insurance reserves totaled \$5.4 million and \$4.0 million at December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively. Of these amounts, \$1.7 million and \$1.3 million, respectively, were classified as current.

***Equity-based Compensation***

We recognize the cost of employee services rendered in exchange for awards of equity instruments, such as stock options and restricted stock, based on the fair value of those awards at the date of the grant. Compensation expense for equity units is recognized, on a straight-line basis, net of forfeitures, over the requisite service period for the fair value of the awards that actually vest.

***Income Taxes***

Deferred taxes are provided on the liability method whereby deferred tax assets are recognized for deductible temporary differences and operating loss and tax credit carry forwards and deferred tax liabilities are recognized for taxable temporary differences. This approach requires recognition of deferred tax liabilities and assets for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been included in the financial statements or tax returns. Under this method, deferred tax liabilities and assets are determined based upon the difference between the financial statement and tax basis of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which the expenses are expected to reverse. Valuation allowances are provided if, based on the weight of available evidence, it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

We recognize a tax benefit associated with an uncertain tax position when, in management's judgment, it is more likely than not that the position will be sustained upon examination by a taxing authority. For a tax position that meets the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold, we initially and subsequently measure the tax benefit as the largest amount that it judges to have a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

settlement with a taxing authority. The liability associated with unrecognized tax benefits is adjusted periodically due to changing circumstances, such as the progress of tax audits, case law developments and new or emerging legislation. Such adjustments are recognized entirely in the period in which they are identified. The effective tax rate includes the net impact of changes in the liability for unrecognized tax benefits and subsequent adjustments as considered appropriate by management.

The largest permanent item in computing both our effective tax rate and taxable income is the deduction allowed for statutory depletion. The impact of statutory depletion on the effective tax rate is presented in Note Q to these financial statements. The deduction for statutory depletion does not necessarily change proportionately to changes in income before income taxes.

***Net Income per Common Share***

Basic and diluted income per share is presented for net income. Basic income per share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of outstanding common shares for the period. Diluted income per share reflects the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other contracts that may require the issuance of common shares in the future were converted. Diluted income per share is computed by increasing the weighted-average number of outstanding common shares to include the additional common shares that would be outstanding after conversion and adjusting net income for changes that would result from the conversion. Only those securities or other contracts that result in a reduction in earnings per share are included in the calculation.

***Comprehensive Income***

In addition to net income, comprehensive income (loss) includes all changes in equity during a period, such as adjustments to minimum pension liabilities and the effective portion of changes in fair value of derivative instruments that qualify as cash flow hedges.

***Short-Term Investments***

Our short-term investments consist of fixed income securities that have been classified and accounted for as available-for-sale. We determine the appropriate classification of our investments at the time of purchase and reevaluate the designations at each balance sheet date. We classify these securities as either short-term or long-term based on each instrument's underlying contractual maturity date. Fixed income securities with maturities of 12 months or less are classified as short-term and fixed income securities with maturities greater than 12 months are classified as long-term. These investments are carried at fair value, with the unrealized gains and losses, net of taxes, reported as a separate component of accumulated other comprehensive income. The cost of securities sold is based upon the specific identification method.

***Financial Instruments***

We currently use interest rate hedge agreements and have historically utilized natural gas hedge agreements to manage interest and energy costs and the risk associated with changing interest rates and natural gas prices. Amounts to be paid or received under these hedge agreements are accrued as interest rates or natural gas prices change and are recognized over the life of the hedge agreements as an adjustment to interest expense or, in the case of natural gas, cost of goods sold. Our policy is to not hold or issue derivative financial instruments for trading or speculative purposes. When entered into, these financial instruments are designated as hedges of underlying exposures, associated with our long-term debt and energy costs, and are monitored to determine if

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

they remain effective hedges. Gains and losses on derivatives designated as cash flow hedges are recorded in other comprehensive income net of tax and reclassified to earnings in a manner that matches the timing of the earnings impact of the hedged transactions. The ineffective portion of all hedges, if any, is recognized currently in income. Additional disclosures for derivative instruments are presented in Note M to these financial statements.

***Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements***

In February 2013, the FASB issued ASU 2013-02, Comprehensive Income ( ASC Topic 220 ): Reporting of Amounts Reclassified Out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income, which requires entities to provide information about the amounts reclassified out of accumulated other comprehensive income by component. In addition, entities are required to present, either on the face of the statement where net income is presented or in the notes, significant amounts reclassified out of accumulated other comprehensive income by the respective line items of net income but only if the amount reclassified is required under U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles ( U.S. GAAP ) to be reclassified to net income in its entirety in the same reporting period. For other amounts that are not required under U.S. GAAP to be reclassified in their entirety to net income, entities are required to cross-reference to other disclosures required under U.S. GAAP that provide additional detail on these amounts. We adopted this guidance, effective for the 2013 reporting period with no material impact on our Financial Statements.

In July 2013, the FASB amended Accounting Standards Codification ( ASC Topic 740 ), Income Taxes. The amendment provides guidance on the financial statement presentation of an unrecognized tax benefit, as either a reduction of a deferred tax asset or as a liability, when a net operating loss carry-forward, a similar tax loss or a tax credit carry-forward exists. The amendment will be effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2013 and may be applied on a retrospective basis. Early adoption is permitted. We do not expect the adoption of this amendment to have a significant effect on our consolidated financial position or results of operations.

**NOTE C EARNINGS PER SHARE**

Basic income per common share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period. Diluted income per common share is computed similarly to basic income per common share except that the weighted average number of common shares outstanding is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if the potentially dilutive common shares had been issued. In accordance with the applicable accounting guidance for calculating earnings per share, we did not include in our calculation of diluted earnings per share for the applicable periods stock options where the exercise prices were greater than the average market prices.

	<b>For the Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Net income	\$ 75,256	\$ 79,154	\$ 30,253
Less: net income allocated to outstanding restricted stockholders	(175)	(105)	
Net income allocated to common stockholders	\$ 75,081	\$ 79,049	\$ 30,253
Weighted-average common stock			
Outstanding	53,035	52,592	50,000
Outstanding assuming dilution	53,409	52,641	50,006

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

**NOTE D CAPITAL STRUCTURE AND ACCUMULATED COMPREHENSIVE INCOME**

***Common Stock***

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, authorizes up to 500,000,000 shares of common stock, par value of \$0.01. Subject to the rights of holders of any series of preferred stock, all of the voting power of the stockholders of Holdings shall be vested in the holders of the common stock. There were 53,492,278 shares of common stock issued and outstanding at December 31, 2013. As of December 31, 2012, there were 52,920,704 shares issued and outstanding. On October 24, 2013, our Board of Directors declared a quarterly cash dividend of \$0.125 per share to common stockholders of record at the close of business on December 16, 2013, payable on January 3, 2014.

Management and our Board of Directors remain committed to evaluating additional ways of creating shareholder value. Any determination to pay dividends and other distributions in cash, stock, or property by Holdings in the future will be at the discretion of our Board of Directors and will be dependent on then-existing conditions, including our business conditions, our financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital requirements, contractual restrictions including restrictive covenants contained in our debt agreements, and other factors. Additionally, because we are a holding company, our ability to pay dividends on our common stock may be limited by restrictions on the ability of our subsidiaries to pay dividends or make distributions to us, including restrictions under the terms of the agreements governing our indebtedness.

***Preferred Stock***

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation authorizes our Board of Directors to issue up to 10,000,000 shares, in the aggregate, of preferred stock, par value of \$0.01 in one or more series and to fix the preferences, powers and relative, participating, optional or other special rights and qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, including the dividend rate, conversion rights, voting rights, redemption rights and liquidation preference and to fix the number of shares to be included in any such series without any further vote or action by our stockholders.

There are no shares of preferred stock issued or outstanding at December 31, 2013 and 2012. At present, we have no plans to issue any preferred stock.

***Share Repurchase Program***

On June 11, 2012, the Board of Directors authorized us to repurchase up to \$25.0 million of our common stock. The authorization was initially for a period of 18 months, concluding on December 11, 2013, but on November 4, 2013, the Board of Directors extended the repurchase program through December 11, 2014. We are authorized to repurchase, from time to time, shares of our outstanding common stock on the open market or in privately negotiated transactions. Stock repurchases will be funded using our available liquidity. The timing and amount of stock repurchases will depend on a variety of factors, including the market conditions as well as corporate and regulatory considerations. The share repurchase program may be suspended, modified or discontinued at any time and we have no obligation to repurchase any additional amount of our common stock under the program. We intend to make all repurchases in compliance with applicable regulatory guidelines and to administer the plan in accordance with applicable laws, including Rule 10b-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. As part of the program, as of December 31, 2013, we have repurchased 100,000 shares of our common stock at an average price of \$10.72 and are authorized to repurchase up to an additional \$23.9 million of our common stock. As of December 31, 2013, all of the 100,000 shares repurchased to date have been re-issued to satisfy employee option exercises.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

***Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income***

Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) consists of fair value adjustments associated with cash flow hedges and accumulated adjustments for net experience losses and prior service cost related to employee benefit plans. The following table presents the changes in accumulated other comprehensive income by component during the year ended December 31, 2013:

	Unrealized gain/(loss) on cash flow hedges	For the Year Ended December 31, 2013 Unrealized gain/(loss) on short-term investments	Pension and other post- retirement benefits liability	Total
Beginning Balance	\$ (182)	\$	\$ (13,993)	\$ (14,175)
Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications	(82)	(27)	8,844	8,735
Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income	185		1,238	1,423
Ending Balance	\$ (79)	\$ (27)	\$ (3,911)	\$ (4,017)

The following table presents the reclassifications out of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) during the year ended December 31, 2013:

Details about accumulated other comprehensive income	Amount reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income	Affected line item in the statement of operations
Gains and losses on cash flow hedges		
Interest rate contracts	\$ 304	Interest expense
	(119)	Tax expense
	\$ 185	Net of tax
Amortization of postretirement benefits liability		
Actuarial gains/(losses)	\$ 1,933	(1)
Prior service cost	92	(1)
	\$ 2,025	Total before tax
	(787)	Tax expense
	1,238	Net of tax
Total reclassifications for the period	\$ 1,423	Net of tax



- (1) These accumulated other comprehensive income components are included in the computation of net periodic pension cost (see Note R).

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

**NOTE E ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE**

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, accounts receivable consisted of the following:

	<b>At December 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Trade receivables	\$ 76,223	\$ 56,519
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	(2,376)	(1,053)
Net trade receivables	73,847	55,466
Other receivables	1,360	4,098
Total accounts receivable	\$ 75,207	\$ 59,564

Net trade receivables increased \$18,381 to \$73,847 as of December 31, 2013 compared to \$55,466 as of December 31, 2012, primarily due to the increase in sales. No single individual customer accounted for more than 10% of sales in the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

**NOTE F INVENTORIES**

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, inventories consisted of the following:

	<b>At December 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Supplies	\$ 15,576	\$ 13,472
Raw materials and work in process	11,728	10,720
Finished goods	36,908	15,643
Total inventories	\$ 64,212	\$ 39,835

Inventories include raw stockpiles and silica and other industrial sand available for shipment, as well as spare parts and supplies for routine facilities maintenance. We value inventory at the lower of cost or market. Cost is determined using the first-in, first-out and average cost methods. Finished goods increased \$21,265 to \$36,908 as of December 31, 2013 compared to \$15,643 as of December 31, 2012, primarily due to an increase of inventory held at transloads.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

**NOTE G PROPERTY, PLANT AND MINE DEVELOPMENT**

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, property, plant and mine development consisted of the following:

	<b>At December 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Mining property and mine development	\$ 164,609	\$ 163,538
Asset retirement cost	7,275	5,124
Land	25,738	24,795
Land improvements	31,093	27,604
Buildings	36,311	31,558
Machinery and equipment	263,304	221,139
Furniture and fixtures	1,131	915
Construction-in-progress	25,974	18,049
	555,435	492,722
Accumulated depletion, depreciation and amortization	(113,319)	(78,504)
<b>Total property, plant and mine development, net</b>	<b>\$ 442,116</b>	<b>\$ 414,218</b>

Depreciation expense, including depletion and amortization, recognized during the year ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 was \$36,418, \$25,099 and \$20,999, respectively. The amount of interest costs capitalized in property, plant and equipment was \$533, \$934 and \$575 for the year ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. As of December 31, 2013, we hold no assets under a capital lease obligation.

**NOTE H ACCRUED LIABILITIES**

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, accrued liabilities consisted of the following:

	<b>At December 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Accrued salaries and wages	\$ 2,411	\$ 2,939
Accrued vacation liability	2,396	2,397
Current portion of liability for pension and post-retirement benefits	1,428	1,413
Accrued healthcare liability	1,662	1,278
Other accrued liabilities	2,926	1,454
<b>Total accrued liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 10,823</b>	<b>\$ 9,481</b>

We are self-insured for health care claims for eligible participating employees and qualified dependent medical claims, subject to deductibles and limitations. Our liabilities for claims incurred but not reported (IBNR) are determined based on an estimate of the ultimate aggregate liability for claims incurred. The estimate is calculated from actual historical claim rates and reviewed and adjusted periodically, as necessary.

Other accrued liabilities consist of taxes payable, accrued shipping costs, royalties payable, and other immaterial items.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

**NOTE I DEBT**

As discussed below, on July 23, 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by amending our Term Loan and replacing our existing revolving line-of-credit. At December 31, 2013 and 2012, debt consisted of the following:

	December 31, 2013	December 31, 2012
Revolving line-of-credit:	\$ (1)	\$ (2)
(1) Revolver expiring July 23, 2018 (4.75% at December 31, 2013)		
(2) Revolver expiring October 31, 2016 (5.0% at December 31, 2012); replaced by (1) on July 23, 2013		
Senior secured credit facility:	371,451	255,425
Term loan facility final maturity July 23, 2020 (4% at December 31, 2013 and 4.75% at December 31, 2012), net of unamortized original issue discount of \$1,674 and \$675, respectively		
Total debt	371,451	255,425
Less: current portion	(3,488)	(2,433)
Total long-term portion of debt	\$ 367,963	\$ 252,992

***Revolving Line-of-Credit***

As of December 31, 2013, the available borrowing base under our revolving line-of-credit (the Revolver) was \$50 million, with zero drawn as of that date and \$9.0 million allocated for letters of credit, leaving \$41.0 million available for general corporate use under this revolving credit agreement.

***Debt Maturities***

At December 31, 2013, contractual maturities of long-term debt are as follows:

2014	3,488
2015	3,490
2016	3,493
2017	3,495
2018	3,499
Thereafter	353,986
	\$ 371,451

On January 31, 2012, we amended our senior secured term loan facility (the Term Loan). The primary revisions to the Term Loan were to eliminate a requirement to provide monthly financial reports, to remove financial covenant restrictions related to capital expenditures, to provide flexibility to make investments and acquisitions and to incur indebtedness, and to provide a new subsidiary guarantee from Coated Sand

Solutions, LLC.

On December 31, 2012, we amended our Revolver. The primary revisions to the Revolver included an increase of the commitment under the Revolver from \$35 million to \$50 million, and the letter of credit sublimit from \$15 million to \$20 million; provided, however, that the aggregate principal amount of the loans and letters of credit obligations outstanding at any one time shall not exceed the borrowing base as calculated pursuant to

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

the agreement. The amendment also extended the termination date of the Revolver from October 31, 2015 to October 31, 2016, reduced prices and fees on borrowings, letters of credit and unused commitments and added an additional subsidiary, Coated Sand Solutions, LLC, as a co-borrower.

On July 23, 2013, we refinanced our existing senior secured debt by amending our Term Loan and replacing our existing revolving line-of-credit. The Term Loan amendment refinanced our existing senior debt by entering into a new \$425 million senior secured credit facility, consisting of a \$375 million Term Loan and the \$50 million Revolver that may also be used for swingline loans (up to \$5 million) or letters of credit (up to \$20 million). The Term Loan amendment also, among other things, removed and amended certain financial and other covenants to provide additional operating flexibility, and lowered interest rates on borrowed amounts. The existing revolving line-of-credit was terminated. The Term Loan will expire on July 23, 2020 and the Revolver will expire on July 23, 2018. As a result of refinancing our Term Loan and replacing our revolving line-of-credit, we expensed \$1.8 million of costs, consisting of \$1.3 million related to third party fees in selling, general, and administrative expenses and \$0.5 million related to early extinguishment of debt.

Our senior secured credit facility is secured by substantially all of our assets and a pledge of the equity interests in certain of our subsidiaries. The facility contains covenants that, among other things, govern our ability to create, incur or assume indebtedness and liens, to make acquisitions or investments, to pay dividends and to sell assets. The facility also requires us to maintain a consolidated total net leverage ratio of no more than 3.75:1.00 as of the last day of any fiscal quarter whenever usage of the Revolver (other than certain undrawn letters of credit) exceeds 25% of the Revolver commitment. As of December 31, 2013, we are in compliance with all covenants in accordance with our senior secured credit facility.

**NOTE J DEFERRED REVENUE**

On November 25, 2008, we, through an affiliate, received advances from two customers totaling \$27 million. The deposits give these customers the right to purchase certain products for a fixed price at certain minimum volumes. In addition, the customers have security on their deposit in the form of promissory notes with an affiliate collateralized by undivided mineral interests in our mineral deposits. These notes originally bore interest at 10% compounded quarterly, to the extent any interest is unpaid. The obligations and related interest are reduced as shipments occur with a portion of the sales price being received in cash and a smaller noncash portion reducing first any accrued interest and then, to the extent available, any outstanding principal. As such, the notes do not require any payments in cash. The notes mature on December 31, 2015 and November 25, 2016. In December 2009, \$12 million of the notes were amended to reduce the interest rate to 5%, retroactive to November 25, 2008. Effective January 1, 2010, the remaining \$15 million was amended to reduce the interest rate to 6%, prospectively.

**NOTE K FAIR VALUE ACCOUNTING**

Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Fair value is estimated by applying the following hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used to measure fair value into three levels and bases the categorization within the hierarchy upon the lowest level of input that is available and significant to the fair value measurement:

Level 1 Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities

Level 2 Observable inputs other than quoted prices in active markets for identical assets and liabilities, quote prices for identical or similar assets or liabilities in inactive markets, or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

Level 3 Inputs that are generally unobservable and typically reflect management's estimate of assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability.

*Cash equivalents*

Due to the short-term maturity, we believe our cash equivalent instruments at December 31, 2013 and 2012 approximate their reported carrying values.

*Short-Term Investments*

In general, the fair value of our short-term investments is based on quoted prices for similar assets in active markets, or for identical assets or similar assets in markets in which there were fewer transactions (Level 2). Money market mutual funds are based on calculated net asset value and are reported in Level 1. Variable rate demand obligations underwritten and remarketed by a financial institution are priced at par value.

*Long-Term Debt, including current maturities*

We believe that the fair values of our long-term debt, including current maturities, approximates their carrying values and based on their effective interest rates compared to current market rates.

*Derivative Instruments*

The estimated fair value of our derivative assets (interest rate caps) are recorded at each reporting period and are based upon widely accepted valuation techniques, including discounted cash flow analysis on the expected cash flows of each derivative contract. This analysis reflects the contractual terms of the derivatives, including the period to maturity, and uses observable market-based inputs, including interest rate curves and implied volatilities. We also incorporate credit valuation adjustments to appropriately reflect both our nonperformance risk as well as that of the respective counterparty in the fair value measurements.

Although we have determined that the majority of the inputs used to value our derivatives fall with Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy, the credit valuation adjustments associated with our derivatives utilize Level 3 inputs, such as estimates of current credit spreads to evaluate the likelihood of default of ourselves and our counterparties. However, as of December 31, 2013, we have assessed that the impact of the credit valuation adjustments on the overall valuation of our derivative positions is not significant. As a result, we have determined that our derivative valuations in their entirety are classified in Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy.

In accordance with the fair value hierarchy, the following table presents the fair value as of December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively, of those assets that we measure at fair value on a recurring basis:

	December 31, 2013			December 31, 2012		
	Level 1	Level 2	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Total
Short-term investments	\$ 622	\$ 74,358	\$ 74,980	\$	\$	\$
Interest rate derivatives		109	109			
Net asset	\$ 622	\$ 74,467	\$ 75,089	\$	\$	\$





**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

**NOTE L SHORT-TERM INVESTMENTS**

We have segregated funds into designated accounts with investment brokers who manage our short-term investment portfolio. Those funds are held on an available-for-sale basis and are therefore reported at fair value on the balance sheet.

The following table summarizes our available-for-sale short-term investments as of December 31, 2013:

	<b>Aggregate Cost</b>	<b>Gross Unrealized Gains</b>	<b>Gross Unrealized Losses</b>	<b>Fair Value</b>
Money market mutual funds	\$ 622	\$	\$	\$ 622
Fixed income securities:				
Certificates of deposit	25,218		(34)	25,184
Commercial paper	15,168	4	(1)	15,171
Corporate notes and bonds	9,495		(9)	9,486
Government agencies	13,979	6		13,985
U.S. Treasuries	4,828		(10)	4,818
Variable Rate Demand Obligations	5,714			5,714
<b>Total available-for-sale investments</b>	<b>\$ 75,024</b>	<b>\$ 10</b>	<b>\$ (54)</b>	<b>\$ 74,980</b>

As of December 31, 2013, we considered the declines in market value of our short-term investment portfolio to be temporary in nature and did not consider any of our investments other-than-temporarily impaired. We typically invest in highly-rated securities, and our investment policy generally limits the amount of credit exposure to any one issuer. The policy requires investments generally to be investment grade, with the primary objective of minimizing the potential risk of principal loss. Fair values were determined for each individual security in the investment portfolio. When evaluating an investment for other-than-temporary impairment, we review factors such as the length of time and extent to which fair value has been below its cost basis, the financial condition of the issuer and any changes thereto, changes in market interest rates, and our intent to sell, or whether it is more likely than not it will be required to sell, the investment before recovery of the investment's cost basis. During 2013, 2012 and 2011 we did not recognize any impairment charges.

**NOTE M DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS**

We are exposed to certain risk arising from both our business operations and economic conditions. We principally manage our exposure to a wide variety of business and operation risks through management of our core business activities. Specifically, we enter into derivative financial instruments to manage exposures that arise from business activities that result in the receipt or payment of future known and unknown cash amounts, the value of which are determined by interest rates. Interest rate derivatives are utilized in the normal course of business to manage our interest cost and the risk associated with changing interest rates. We do not use derivative financial instruments for trading or speculative purposes. By their nature, all such instruments involve risk, including the possibility that a loss may occur from the failure of another party to perform according to the terms of a contract (credit risk) or the possibility that future changes in market price may make a financial instrument less valuable or more onerous (market risk). As is customary for these types of instruments, we do not require collateral or other security from other parties to these instruments. In management's opinion, there is no significant risk of loss in the event of nonperformance of the counterparties to these financial instruments.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

*Cash Flow Hedges of Interest Rate Risk*

Our objectives in using interest rate derivatives are to add stability to interest expense and to manage our exposure to interest rate movements. To accomplish this objective, we primarily use interest rate cap agreements as part of our interest rate risk management strategy. Interest rate caps designated as cash flow hedges involve the receipt of variable-rate amounts from a counterparty if interest rates rise above the strike rate on the contract in exchange for an upfront premium.

In connection with the Term Loan, we entered into two interest rate cap agreements that effectively place an upper limit for one-month LIBOR at 4.0% on the interest rate charged for \$130.0 million of our floating rate Term Loan. On March 31, 2012, one of the agreements with a notional amount of \$100.0 million matured. Concurrently with the maturity, the notional amount of a second agreement with an original notional amount of \$30.0 million automatically increased to \$130.0 million per the terms of the contract. On June 30, 2013 the second agreement matured. No additional expense was reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income or recognized directly in earnings as a result of the maturity or adjustment. We entered into two interest rate cap agreements on April 8, 2013 and September 6, 2013 with a notional amount of \$128 million and \$60 million, respectively, which effectively place an upper limit for three-month LIBOR at 4.0%. We assess the effectiveness of our hedges in offsetting the variability in the cash flow of the hedged obligations on a quarterly basis. The effective portion of changes in the fair value of derivatives designated and that qualify as cash flow hedges is recorded in equity as accumulated other comprehensive income and is subsequently reclassified into earnings in the period that the hedged forecasted transaction affects earnings. The ineffective portion of the change in fair value of the derivatives is recognized directly in earnings. During the year ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, we had no ineffectiveness for such contracts.

*Cash Flow Hedges of Commodities Risk*

Our objectives in using commodities derivatives are to add stability to energy costs and to manage our exposure to fluctuations in natural gas prices. To accomplish this objective, we have historically used natural gas swap agreements as part of our commodities risk management strategy. These hedge agreements are used to exchange the difference between natural gas prices calculated by reference to an agreed-upon notional principal amount or natural gas quantity.

We had entered into natural gas swap agreements that effectively placed a fixed price for a specific quantity of natural gas. The agreements hedged against the increase in natural gas prices for the purchase of 420,000 MMBTU. The agreements matured on December 31, 2011.

The following table summarizes the fair value of our derivative instruments. See Note K for additional disclosures regarding the estimated fair values of our derivative instruments at December 31, 2013, and 2012.

	Maturity Date	December 31, 2013			December 31, 2012		
		Contract/Notional Amount	Carrying Amount	Fair Value	Contract/Notional Amount	Carrying Amount	Fair Value
Interest rate cap agreement <sup>(1)</sup>	2013	\$	\$	\$	\$ 130 million	\$	\$
Interest rate cap agreement <sup>(1)</sup>	2016	\$ 188 million	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$

<sup>(1)</sup> Agreements limit the LIBOR floating interest rate base to 4%.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

We have designated these contracts as qualified cash flow hedges. Accordingly, the effective portion of the gain or loss on the derivative instrument is reported as a component of other comprehensive income and recognized in earnings in the same period or periods during which the hedged transaction affects earnings.

The following table summarizes the effect of derivatives instruments on our income statements and our condensed consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Deferred gains (losses) from derivatives in OCI, beginning of period	\$ (182)	\$ (409)	\$ (532)
Gain (loss) recognized in OCI from derivative instruments	(82)		123
Gain (loss) reclassified from Accumulated OCI	185	227	
Deferred gains (losses) from derivatives in OCI, end of period	\$ (79)	\$ (182)	\$ (409)

**NOTE N EQUITY-BASED COMPENSATION**

During 2009, the board of directors of our then parent company, GGC USS Holdings, LLC, approved, and the parent company implemented, a management equity program (the Equity Program). The Equity Program granted Class C and Class D member units in the then parent company, GGC USS Holdings, LLC, to three members of executive management. As of December 31, 2013, all Class C and Class D equity units were vested.

The Class C units vested ratably over five years. These units have no exercise price and as such the fair value of the incentive units is equal to the fair value of the underlying equity units. The Class D units were fully vested upon grant in 2009. During 2013, the vesting of 210,333 Class C equity units was accelerated, resulting in a total vesting for the year of 420,667.

Even though the equity was granted at the former parent company level, we recognized compensation expense related to Class C equity incentive units of \$109, \$208 and \$239 in the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. During 2013, no Class C equity incentive units were forfeited. In 2012, we recorded a reversal of previously recognized compensation expense of \$11 associated with these units and cancelled the remaining unamortized expense of \$109. During 2011, 867,625 Class C equity incentive units were forfeited resulting in a reversal of previously recognized compensation expense of \$344 associated with these units and canceled the remaining unamortized expense of \$476.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

Our activity with respect to Class C equity incentive units for 2013, 2012, and 2011 was as follows:

	<b>Number of Class C Units</b>	<b>Class C Unit Grant Date Weighted Average Fair Value</b>
Unvested, December 31, 2010	2,418,834	\$ 0.52
Granted		
Vested	(499,542)	\$ 0.52
Forfeited	(867,625)	\$ 0.52
Unvested, December 31, 2011	1,051,667	\$ 0.52
Granted		
Vested	(420,667)	\$ 0.52
Forfeited	(210,333)	\$ 0.52
Unvested, December 31, 2012	420,667	\$ 0.52
Granted		
Vested	(420,667)	\$ 0.52
Forfeited		
Unvested, December 31, 2013		\$

The total fair value of equity incentive units vested for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 was \$0, \$219 and \$260, respectively.

Fair value of the underlying equity units is determined by utilizing the Black-Scholes pricing model and taking into consideration the rights and preferences of the underlying equity units.

The following table illustrates the assumptions used in the Black-Scholes pricing model:

Risk-free interest rate	1.87%
Expected volatility	50%
Expected term	4 years

**Risk-free interest rate** This is an interpolated rate from the U.S. constant maturity treasury rate for a term corresponding to the time to liquidity event, as described below. An increase in the risk-free rate will increase compensation expense.

**Expected volatility** This is a measure of the amount by which the price of various comparable companies' common stock has fluctuated or is expected to fluctuate. Our common stock was not publicly-traded at the time of issuance. The comparable companies were selected by analyzing public companies in the industry based on various factors including, but not limited to, company size, financial data availability, active trading volume, and capital structure. An increase in the expected volatility will increase compensation expense.

**Expected term** This is the period of time over which the underlying equity units are expected to remain outstanding. An increase in the expected term will increase compensation expense.

## Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

In July 2011, we adopted the U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. 2011 Incentive Compensation Plan (the 2011 Plan ), which provides for grants of stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock and other incentive-based awards.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

As of December 31, 2013, there were a total of 1,231,540 options outstanding, 296,908 of which are exercisable, at a weighted-average exercise price of \$14.30. The options vest on a graded vesting schedule and the related compensation expense is recognized over the vesting period of each separately vesting portion. We recognized \$2.0 million, \$2.2 million and \$1.0 million of equity-based compensation expense related to these options during the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively. As of December 31, 2013, there was \$4.1 million of total unrecognized compensation expense related to these options, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.4 years.

Our activity with respect to stock options for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 was as follows:

	Number of Shares	Range of Exercise Prices		Weighted Average Exercise Price	Fair Value
Unvested, July 8, 2011 (plan inception)					
Granted	1,650,386	\$ 10.33	25.00	\$ 14.56	\$ 4.36
Exercised					
Vested					
Forfeited	(148,988)			\$ 14.21	\$ 3.81
Unvested, December 31, 2011	1,501,398	\$ 10.33	25.00	\$ 14.60	\$ 3.74
Granted	572,847	\$ 10.57	24.00	14.15	\$ 5.68
Exercised	(9,528)		10.33	10.33	4.67
Vested					
Forfeited	(241,317)			15.34	4.47
Unvested, December 31, 2012	1,823,400	\$ 10.33	25.00	\$ 14.38	\$ 5.04
Granted	140,000	\$ 20.03	24.59	22.48	\$ 10.03
Exercised	(551,165)		10.33	14.41	4.35
Vested					
Forfeited	(180,695)			16.30	5.93
Unvested, December 31, 2013	1,231,540	\$ 10.33	25.00	\$ 15.01	\$ 5.39

The total intrinsic value of stock options exercised in 2013 was \$5.9 million. Cash received from options exercised in 2013 was \$7.9 million. The actual tax benefit realized for the tax deductions from option exercises in 2013 totaled \$2.3 million.

In calculating the compensation expense for options granted, we have estimated the fair value of each grant issued through December 31, 2013 using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The fair value of stock options granted have been calculated based on the stock price on the date of the option grant, the exercise price of the option and the following assumptions, which are evaluated and revised, as necessary, to reflect market conditions and experience. These assumptions are the weighted-average of the assumptions used for all grants which occurred during the respective fiscal year.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

The following table illustrates the assumptions used in the Black-Scholes pricing model for options granted during the respective fiscal year:

	<b>2013</b>		<b>2012</b>	
Risk-free interest rate	1.03	1.31%	0.83	1.05%
Expected volatility	45%		45%	
Expected term	6.25 years		6.25 years	
Expected dividend yield	0%		0%	
Expected forfeiture yield	0%		0%	

**Risk-free interest rate** This is an interpolated rate from the U.S. constant maturity treasury rate for a term corresponding to the expected term, as described below. An increase in the risk-free rate will increase compensation expense.

**Expected volatility** This is a measure of the amount by which the price of various comparable companies' common stock has fluctuated or is expected to fluctuate, as our common stock has not been publicly-traded for an adequate period of time. The comparable companies were selected by analyzing public companies in the industry based on various factors including, but not limited to, company size, financial data availability, active trading volume, and capital structure. An increase in the expected volatility will increase compensation expense.

**Expected term** This is the period of time over which the options are expected to remain outstanding. An increase in the expected term will increase compensation expense. The computation of the expected term is based on the simplified method as our stock options are standard options and we have little recent history of exercise data. Under the simplified method, the expected term is presumed to be the mid-point between the average vesting date and the end of the contractual term.

Since January 31, 2012, the date of our initial public offering, we declared a special dividend of \$0.50 per share on December 10, 2012 and three quarterly dividends of \$0.125 per share during 2013. Options issued in 2013 all occurred early in the year before dividends were consistently declared. As a result, the dividend yield assumptions for those and all prior options issued was 0.00%. We will continue to evaluate this assumption as we develop a dividend history and new options are issued.

Our expected forfeiture rate is the estimated percentage of options granted that are expected to be forfeited or cancelled on an annual basis before becoming fully vested. We have assumed that there will be no forfeitures due to the fact that we do not have adequate historical forfeiture data on which to base the assumption.

As of December 31, 2013, there were a total of 228,403 shares of restricted stock. The restricted stock vests on a graded vesting schedule and the related compensation expense is recognized over the vesting period of each separately vesting portion. The fair value of the restricted stock awards is equal to the market price of our stock at date of grant. We recognized \$976 of equity-based compensation expense related to these restricted stock shares during the year ended December 31, 2013. As of December 31, 2013, there was \$2.1 million of total unrecognized compensation expense related to these restricted stock shares, which is expected to be recognized over a period of 2.3 years.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

	Number of Shares	Grant Date Weighted Average Fair Value
Unvested, December 31, 2012	70,000	\$ 15.58
Granted	180,069	22.58
Vested	(21,666)	17.11
Forfeited		
Unvested, December 31, 2013	228,403	\$ 20.95

**NOTE O LEASES**

We are obligated under certain operating leases for railroad cars, office space, mining property, mining/processing equipment and transportation and other equipment. Certain operating lease agreements include options to purchase the equipment for fair market value at the end of the original lease term. Future minimum annual commitments under such operating leases at December 31, 2013 are as follows:

2014	23,722
2015	21,915
2016	19,726
2017	17,614
2018	16,326
Thereafter	36,125
Total future lease commitments	\$ 135,428

Expense related to operating leases and rental agreements for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 totaled approximately \$16.3 million, \$11.9 million and \$6.5 million, respectively.

As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, we have no obligation under a capital lease.

In general, the above leases include renewal options and provide that we pay for all utilities, insurance, taxes and maintenance.

**NOTE P COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

Our operating subsidiary, U.S. Silica Company ( U.S. Silica ), has been named as a defendant in various product liability claims alleging silica exposure causing silicosis. U.S. Silica was named as a defendant in three claims filed during the year ended December 31, 2013, two filed in 2012 and three filed in 2011. U.S. Silica has been named as a defendant in similar suits since 1975. As of December 31, 2013, there were 88 active silica-related products liability claims pending in which U.S. Silica is a defendant. Although the outcomes of these claims cannot be predicted with certainty, in the opinion of management, the ultimate resolution of these matters will not have a material adverse effect on our financial position or results of operations.

For periods prior to 1986, U.S. Silica had numerous insurance policies and an indemnity from a former owner that covered silicosis claims. In the fourth quarter of 2012, U.S. Silica settled all rights under the indemnity and its underlying insurance policies receiving \$5.1 million from the parties involved. As a result of the settlement, the indemnity and related policies are no longer available to U.S. Silica and U.S. Silica will not seek reimbursement for any defense costs or claim payments. Other insurance policies, however, continue to remain available to U.S. Silica.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

We have recorded estimated liabilities for these claims in other long-term obligations as well as estimated recoveries under the indemnity agreement and an estimate of future recoveries under insurance in other assets on our consolidated balance sheets. As of December 31, 2013 and 2012, other noncurrent assets included \$313 and \$247, respectively, for insurance for third-party products liability claims and other long-term obligations included \$1.6 million and \$1.3 million, respectively, in third-party products claims liability. Based on decreases in the actual claims filed during the periods along with decreases in the estimated future product liability claims and their related costs, as well as the aforementioned settlement, we recorded pre-tax adjustments to selling, general and administrative expenses related to silica claims (including a \$0.5 million loss in 2013, a \$3.4 million gain in 2012, and a \$2.6 million gain in 2011).

**NOTE Q INCOME TAXES**

We evaluate our deferred tax assets periodically to determine if valuation allowances are required. Ultimately, the realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon generation of future taxable income during those periods in which temporary differences become deductible and/or credits can be utilized. To this end, management considers the level of historical taxable income, the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, tax-planning strategies and projected future taxable income. Based on these considerations, and the carry-forward availability of a portion of the deferred tax assets, management believes it is more likely than not that we will realize the benefit of the deferred tax assets.

The (expense) benefit for income taxes consisted of the following for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

	<b>Years Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
<b>Current:</b>			
Federal	\$ (20,819)	\$ (22,165)	\$ (3,222)
State	(1,831)	(6,237)	(51)
	(22,650)	(28,402)	(3,273)
<b>Deferred:</b>			
Federal	1,453	(3,645)	(2,624)
State	436	1,396	(1,265)
	1,889	(2,249)	(3,889)
<b>Income tax expense</b>	<b>\$ (20,761)</b>	<b>\$ (30,651)</b>	<b>\$ (7,162)</b>

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax effects, based on enacted tax laws, of temporary differences between the values of assets and liabilities recorded for financial reporting and for tax purposes and of net operating loss and other carry forwards.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

The tax effects of the types of temporary differences and carry forwards that gave rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities at December 31, 2013 and 2012 consisted of the following:

	<b>At December 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Gross deferred tax assets:		
State tax credits and net operating loss carry forward	\$ 1,007	\$ 924
Pension and post-retirement benefit costs	15,579	22,427
Alternative minimum tax credit carry forward	22,528	25,889
Property, plant and equipment	6,109	5,113
Accrued expenses	3,818	2,272
Inventories	5,863	1,689
Third-party products liability	674	531
Stock-based compensation expense	1,306	1,262
Other	5,502	6,019
<b>Total deferred tax assets</b>	<b>\$ 62,386</b>	<b>\$ 66,126</b>
Gross deferred tax liabilities:		
Land and mineral property basis difference	\$ (61,366)	\$ (60,954)
Fixed assets and depreciation	(47,016)	(46,396)
Intangible assets	(6,788)	(6,957)
Other	(797)	(822)
<b>Total deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>(115,967)</b>	<b>(115,129)</b>
<b>Net deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>(53,581)</b>	<b>(49,003)</b>
<b>Less: Net current deferred tax assets</b>	<b>(17,737)</b>	<b>(10,108)</b>
<b>Net long-term deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>\$ (71,318)</b>	<b>\$ (59,111)</b>

At December 31, 2013 and 2012, we have an alternative minimum tax credit carry forward at December 31, 2013 and 2012 of approximately \$22.5 million and \$25.9 million, respectively. The credit carry forward may be carried forward indefinitely to offset any excess of regular tax liability over alternative minimum tax liability subject to certain limitations.

Ultimately, the realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon generation of future taxable income during those periods in which temporary differences become deductible and/or credits can be utilized. To this end, management considers the level of historical taxable income, the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, tax-planning strategies and projected future taxable income. Based on these considerations, and the carry-forward availability of a portion of the deferred tax assets, management believes it is more likely than not that we will realize the benefit of the deferred tax assets.

At the end of each reporting period as presented, there were no material amounts of interest and penalties recognized in the statement of operations or balance sheets. We have no material unrecognized tax benefits or any known material tax contingencies at December 31, 2013 or December 31, 2012 and does not expect this to change significantly within the next twelve months. Tax returns filed with the IRS for the years 2010 through 2012 along with tax returns filed with numerous state entities remain subject to examination.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

Excess tax benefits from equity-based compensation are credited to stockholders' equity. The excess tax benefits credited to stockholders' equity were \$1.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2013. There were no excess tax benefits for the years ended December 31, 2012 and 2011.

The effective income tax rate on pretax earnings differed from the U.S. federal statutory rate for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 for the following reasons:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2013	2012	2011
(Expense) benefit computed at U.S. federal statutory rate	(35.0)%	(35.0)%	(35.0)%
Decrease (increase) resulting from:			
Percentage depletion	11.0	9.9	17.5
Prior year tax return reconciliation	1.9	(0.5)	0.4
State income taxes, net of federal benefit	(2.4)	(2.7)	(1.6)
Domestic production deduction	2.4	0.7	
Medicare Part D subsidy			(0.1)
Equity-based compensation		(0.1)	(0.2)
Other, net	0.5	(0.2)	(0.1)
Income tax (expense) benefit	(21.6)%	(27.9)%	(19.1)%

The largest permanent item in computing both our effective tax rate and taxable income is the deduction allowed for statutory depletion. The deduction for statutory depletion does not necessarily change proportionately to changes in income before income taxes.

We are evaluating the potential impact of the final Treasury regulations released on September 13, 2013 concerning amounts paid to acquire, produce or improve tangible property and recovery of basis upon disposition. We are determining whether or not any changes in accounting method will be required and if they will result in a material impact to our financial statements. At this time, we do not anticipate there being a material impact.

**NOTE R PENSION AND POST-RETIREMENT BENEFITS**

We maintain a single-employer noncontributory defined benefit pension plan covering certain employees. There have been no new entrants to the plan since May 2009 when the plan was frozen to all new employees. The plan provides benefits based on each covered employee's years of qualifying service. Our funding policy is to contribute amounts within the range of the minimum required and maximum deductible contributions for the plan consistent with a goal of appropriate minimization of the unfunded projected benefit obligation. The pension plan uses a benefit level per year of service for covered hourly employees and a final average pay method for covered salaried employees. The plan uses the projected unit credit cost method to determine the actuarial valuation.

We employ a total rate of return investment approach whereby a mix of equities and fixed income investments are used to maximize the long-term return of plan assets for a prudent level of risk. Risk tolerance is established through careful consideration of plan liabilities, plan funded status, and corporate financial condition. The investment portfolio contains a diversified blend of equity and fixed-income investments. Furthermore, equity investments are diversified across U.S. and non-U.S. stocks, as well as growth, value and small and large capitalizations. Investment risk is measured and monitored on an ongoing basis through quarterly investment portfolio reviews, annual liability measurements, and periodic asset/liability studies.

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

We employ a building block approach in determining the long-term rate of return for plan assets. Historical markets are studied and long-term historical relationships between equities and fixed-income are preserved consistent with the widely accepted capital market principle that assets with higher volatility generate a greater return over the long run. Current market factors such as inflation and interest rates are evaluated before long-term capital market assumptions are determined. The long-term portfolio return is established via a building block approach with proper consideration of diversification and rebalancing. Peer data and historical returns are reviewed to check for reasonability and appropriateness.

In addition, we provide defined benefit post-retirement healthcare and life insurance benefits to some employees. Covered employees become eligible for these benefits at retirement after meeting minimum age and service requirements. The projected future cost of providing post-retirement benefits, such as healthcare and life insurance, is recognized as an expense as employees render services.

We contribute to a Voluntary Employees' Beneficiary Association trust that will be used to partially fund health care benefits for future retirees. Benefits are funded to the extent contributions are tax deductible, which under current legislation is limited. In general, retiree health benefits are paid as covered expenses are incurred.

Net pension benefit cost consisted of the following for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011:

	<b>Years Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Service cost - benefits earned during the period	\$ 1,280	\$ 1,118	\$ 1,145
Interest cost	4,198	4,734	4,755
Expected return on plan assets	(5,061)	(5,381)	(4,817)
Net amortization and deferral	1,904	1,105	595
<b>Net pension benefit costs</b>	<b>\$ 2,321</b>	<b>\$ 1,576</b>	<b>\$ 1,678</b>

Net post-retirement cost consisted of the following for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011:

	<b>Years Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Service cost - benefits earned during the period	\$ 193	\$ 197	\$ 185
Interest cost	947	1,163	1,161
Expected return on plan assets	(4)	(4)	(5)
Net amortization and deferral	87	177	
<b>Net post-retirement costs</b>	<b>\$ 1,223</b>	<b>\$ 1,533</b>	<b>\$ 1,341</b>

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

The changes in benefit obligations and plan assets, as well as the funded status of our pension and post-retirement plans at December 31, 2013 and 2012 were as follows:

	<b>Pension Benefits</b>		<b>Post-retirement Benefits</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Benefit obligation at January 1,	\$ 107,619	\$ 100,083	\$ 25,717	\$ 26,528
Service cost	1,280	1,118	193	197
Interest cost	4,198	4,734	947	1,163
Actuarial gain (loss)	(8,071)	10,255	(3,933)	(1,087)
Benefits paid	(5,749)	(9,238)	(1,102)	(1,529)
Amendments	551	667		
Other			439	445
Benefit obligation at December 31,	\$ 99,828	\$ 107,619	\$ 22,261	\$ 25,717
Fair value of plan assets at January 1,	\$ 80,850	\$ 74,596	\$ 54	\$ 54
Actual return on plan assets	7,986	10,711	8	
Employer contributions	2,280	4,781	652	1,084
Benefits paid	(5,749)	(9,238)	(1,102)	(1,529)
Other			439	445
Fair value of plan assets at December 31,	\$ 85,367	\$ 80,850	\$ 51	\$ 54
Plan assets less than benefit obligations at December 31 recognized as liability for pension and other post-retirement benefits	\$ (14,461)	\$ (26,768)	\$ (22,210)	\$ (25,664)

The accumulated benefit obligation for the defined benefit pension plans, which excludes the assumption of future salary increases, totaled \$99.4 million and \$107.0 million at December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively.

The amendments in 2012 reflect plan changes including increases in the benefit multiplier for certain participants as well as the reduction of certain benefits to estimated highly compensated salary participants.

We also sponsor unfunded, nonqualified pension plans. The projected benefit obligation, accumulated benefit obligation and fair value of plan assets for these plans were \$1.6 million, \$1.6 million and \$0 at December 31, 2013 and \$1.7 million, \$1.7 million and \$0 million at December 31, 2012.

Future estimated annual benefit payments for pension and post-retirement benefit obligations as of December 31, 2013 are as follows:

	<b>Benefits</b>	
	<b>Post-retirement</b>	
	<b>Before</b>	<b>After</b>
	<b>Medicare</b>	<b>Medicare</b>
	<b>Subsidy</b>	<b>Subsidy</b>
<b>Pension</b>		



Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

2014	6,104	1,524	1,354
2015	6,295	1,550	1,369
2016	6,514	1,596	1,404
2017	6,802	1,696	1,495
2018	7,039	1,722	1,513
2019-2022	36,711	9,080	7,960

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

Our best estimate of expected contributions to the pension and post-retirement medical benefit plans for the 2014 fiscal year are \$4.6 million and \$1.4 million, respectively.

The amounts in accumulated other comprehensive income expected to be recognized as components of net periodic benefit cost during the 2014 fiscal year are as follows:

	<b>Pension</b>	<b>Benefits Post-retirement</b>	<b>Total</b>
Net actuarial loss	\$ 485	\$	\$ 485
Prior service cost	201		201
	\$ 686	\$	\$ 686

The total amounts in accumulated other comprehensive income related to net actuarial loss and prior service costs, net of tax, as of December 31, 2013 were \$3.4 and \$2.3 million, respectively.

The following weighted-average assumptions were used to determine our obligations under the plans:

	<b>Pension Benefits</b>		<b>Post-retirement Benefits</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Discount rate	4.8%	4.00%	4.8%	4.00%
Long-term rate of compensation increase	3.5%	3.50%	N/A	N/A
Long-term rate of return on plan assets	7.5%	8.00%	7.5%	8.00%
Health care cost trend rate:				
Pre-65 initial rate/ultimate rate	N/A	N/A	8%/5%	8.5%/5%
Pre-65 ultimate year	N/A	N/A	0	0
Post-65 initial rate/ultimate rate	N/A	N/A	7.3%/5%	7.5%/5%
Post-65 ultimate year	N/A	N/A	2021	2020

The discount rate reflects the expected long-term rates of return with maturities comparable to payments for the plan obligations utilizing Aon Hewitt's AA Only Above Medium Curve, rounded down to the next 0.05%.

Assumed health care cost trend rates have a significant effect on the amounts reported for the health care plans. A one-percentage-point change in assumed health care cost trend rates would have the following effects:

	<b>One-Percentage-Point</b>	
	<b>Increase</b>	<b>Decrease</b>
Effect on total of service and interest cost	\$ 145	\$ (122)
Effect on post-retirement benefit obligation	2,535	(2,163)

The major investment categories and their relative percentage of the fair value of total plan assets as invested at December 31, 2013 and 2012 were as follows:

	Pension Benefits		Post-retirement Benefits	
	2013	2012	2013	2012
Equity securities	57.4%	59.9%	59.0%	58.7%
Debt securities	36.6%	38.6%	29.5%	39.2%
Cash	6.0%	1.5%	11.5%	2.1%

**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

The fair values of the pension plan assets at December 31, 2013, by asset category, are as follows:

	<b>Level 1</b>	<b>Level 2</b>	<b>Level 3</b>	<b>Total</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 5,067	\$	\$	\$ 5,067
Mutual funds:				
Diversified emerging markets	7,753			7,753
Foreign large blend	13,851			13,851
Large-cap blend	17,804			17,804
Long-term bonds	31,230			31,230
Mid-cap blend	5,807			5,807
Real estate	3,776			3,776
Insurance policies			79	79
Net asset	\$ 85,288	\$	\$ 79	\$ 85,367

The fair values of the pension plan assets at December 31, 2012, by asset category, are as follows:

	<b>Level 1</b>	<b>Level 2</b>	<b>Level 3</b>	<b>Total</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,208	\$	\$	\$ 1,208
Mutual funds:				
Diversified emerging markets	8,186			8,186
Foreign large blend	13,827			13,827
Large-cap blend	16,666			16,666
Long-term bonds	31,198			31,198
Mid-cap blend	5,650			5,650
Real estate	4,026			4,026
Insurance policies			89	89
Net asset	\$ 80,761		\$ 89	\$ 80,850

We contribute to three multiemployer defined benefit pension plans under the terms of collective-bargaining agreements for union-represented employees. A multiemployer plan is subject to collective bargaining for employees of two or more unrelated companies. These plans allow multiple employers to pool their pension resources and realize efficiencies associated with the daily administration of the plan. Multiemployer plans are generally governed by a board of trustees composed of management and labor representatives and are funded through employer contributions. However, in most cases, management is not directly represented.

The risks of participating in multiemployer plans differ from single employer plans as follows: 1) assets contributed to a multiemployer plan by one employer may be used to provide benefits to employees of other participating employers, 2) if a participating employer stops contributing to the plan, the unfunded obligations of the plan may be borne by the remaining participating employers, and 3) if we cease to have an obligation to contribute to one or more of the multiemployer plans to which we contribute, we may be required to pay those plans an amount based on the underfunded status of the plan, referred to as a withdrawal liability.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

A summary of each multiemployer pension plan for which we participate is presented below:

Pension Fund	EIN/ Pension Plan No.	Pension Protection Act Zone Status <sup>(1)</sup>		FIP/RP Status Pending/ Implemented	Company Contributions			Surcharge Imposed	Expiration Date of CBA
		2013	2012		2013	2012	2011		
LIUNA	52-6074345/001	Red	Red	Yes	\$ 124	\$ 123	\$ 116	Yes	5/31/2014
IUOE	36-6052390/001	Green	Green	No	22	19	16	No	7/31/2015
CSSS <sup>(2)</sup>	36-6044243/001	Red	Red	Yes	51	51	26	NA	NA

<sup>(1)</sup> The Pension Protection Act of 2006 defines the zone status as follows: green healthy, yellow endangered, orange seriously endangered and red critical.

<sup>(2)</sup> In 2011, we withdrew from the Central States, Southeast and Southwest Areas Pension Plan. The withdrawal liability of \$1.0 million will be paid in monthly installments of \$4 until 2031.

Our contributions to individual multiemployer pension funds did not exceed 5% of the fund's total contributions in any of the three years ended December 31, 2013. Additionally, our contributions to multiemployer postretirement benefit plans were immaterial for all periods presented in the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

We also sponsor a defined contribution plan covering certain employees. We contribute to the plan in two ways. For certain employees not covered by the defined benefit plan, we make a contribution equal to 4% of their salary. We also contribute an employee match of 25 cents, based on financial performance, for each dollar contributed by an employee, up to 8% of their earnings. For certain employees, we make a profit sharing match up to 75 cents, based on financial performance, for each dollar contributed up to 8% of their earnings. Finally, for some employees, we make a catch-up match of 25 cents for each dollar of catch-up contributions. Contributions were \$1.7 million, \$1.4 million and \$1.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

**NOTE 5 OBLIGATIONS UNDER GUARANTEES**

We have indemnified Travelers Casualty and Surety Company of America ( Travelers ) against any loss Travelers may incur in the event that holders of surety bonds, issued on behalf of us by Travelers, execute the bonds. As of December 31, 2013, Travelers had \$7.7 million in bonds outstanding for us. The majority of these bonds (\$7.6 million) relate to reclamation requirements issued by various governmental authorities. Reclamation bonds remain outstanding until the mining area is reclaimed and the authority issues a formal release. The remaining bonds relate to such indefinite purposes as licenses, permits, and tax collection.

We have indemnified Safeco Insurance Company of America ( Safeco ) against any loss Safeco may incur in the event that holders of surety bonds, issued on behalf of us by Safeco, execute the bonds. As of December 31, 2013, Safeco had \$513 in bonds outstanding for us. These are all reclamation bonds.

U.S. Silica is the contingent guarantor of Kanawha Rail Corporation's ( KRC ) obligations as lessee of 199 covered hopper railroad cars, which are used by U.S. Silica to ship sand to its customers. KRC's obligation as lessee includes paying monthly rent of \$66 until June 30, 2015, maintaining the cars, paying for any cars damaged or destroyed, and indemnifying all other parties to the lease transaction against liabilities including any loss of certain tax benefits. By separate agreement between U.S. Silica and KRC, KRC may, upon the occurrence of certain events, assign the lease obligations to U.S. Silica, but none of these events have occurred.



---

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

**NOTE T RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS**

*Advisory Agreement*

In connection with our acquisition by Golden Gate Capital, we entered into an Advisory Agreement with Golden Gate Capital whereby Golden Gate Capital agreed to provide business and organizational strategy and financial and advisory services. Such services included support and assistance to management with respect to negotiating and analyzing acquisitions and divestitures, negotiating and analyzing financing alternatives, preparing financial projections, monitoring compliance with financing agreements, marketing functions and searching for and hiring management personnel.

As compensation for these services, we agreed to pay Golden Gate Capital (1) an annual advisory fee in the aggregate amount equal to \$1.25 million, payable quarterly in arrears, and (2) a transaction fee of 1.25% of the aggregate value of each transaction resulting in a change in control of GGC Holdings or its subsidiaries, along with each acquisition, divestiture, recapitalization and financing. In addition to the fees described above, we also reimbursed Golden Gate Capital for all out-of-pocket costs incurred by Golden Gate Capital in connection with its activities under the Advisory Agreement, and indemnified Golden Gate Capital from and against all losses, claims, damages and liabilities related to the performance of its duties under the Advisory Agreement.

On February 6, 2012, we paid \$8.0 million to Golden Gate Capital to terminate the Advisory Agreement. The \$8.0 million termination fee was accrued for at December 31, 2011 and no additional expense has been recognized during the year ended December 31, 2012. Advisory fees paid to Golden Gate Capital under the Advisory Agreement in 2011 were \$1.3 million. These expenses are included in other operating expenses and presented as advisory fees to parent within our income statements.

*Promissory Note*

On December 22, 2010, we entered into a \$15.0 million promissory note with our former parent, GGC USS Holdings, LLC. The note provided working capital for a new subsidiary and was scheduled to mature on December 22, 2015. The note bore interest at 10%. Outstanding principal and interest under the note were payable upon demand, but no later than the maturity date. Upon sole election by GGC Holdings, any unpaid interest could be paid in cash on each December 22 of each year until the maturity date. As of and for the year ended December 31, 2011, interest on the note is recorded in interest expense in the Income Statements and any unpaid interest is included in accrued interest on the Balance Sheet. On January 31, 2012, simultaneously with the IPO, GGC Holdings contributed to us all of the stock of GGC RCS Holdings, Inc. and converted the \$15.0 million promissory note, including \$1.7 million of accrued interest, to equity.

As of December 31, 2013, GGC USS Holdings, LLC held no interest in U.S. Silica after divesting its ownership interest in U.S. Silica during 2013.

**NOTE U SEGMENT REPORTING**

Our business is organized into two reportable segments, Oil & Gas Proppants and Industrial & Specialty Products, based on end markets. The reportable segments are consistent with how management views the markets that we serve and the financial information reviewed by the chief operating decision maker. We manage our Oil & Gas Proppants and Industrial & Specialty Products businesses as components of an enterprise for which separate information is available and is evaluated regularly by the chief operating decision maker in deciding how to allocate resources and assess performance.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS****(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

An operating segment's performance is primarily evaluated based on segment contribution margin, which excludes certain corporate costs not associated with the operations of the segment. These corporate costs are separately stated below and include costs that are related to functional areas such as operations management, corporate purchasing, accounting, treasury, information technology, legal and human resources. We believe that segment contribution margin, as defined above, is an appropriate measure for evaluating the operating performance of its segments. However, this measure should be considered in addition to, not a substitute for, or superior to, income from operations or other measures of financial performance prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. The other accounting policies of each of the two reporting segments are the same as those in the summary of significant accounting policies included in Note B.

In the Oil & Gas Proppants segment, we serve the oil and gas recovery market providing fracturing sand, or frac sand, which is pumped down oil and natural gas wells to prop open rock fissures and increase the flow rate of natural gas and oil from the wells.

The Industrial & Specialty Products segment consists of over 250 products and materials used in a variety of industries including, container glass, fiberglass, specialty glass, flat glass, building products, fillers and extenders, foundry products, chemicals, recreation products and filtration products.

The following table presents sales and segment contribution margin for the reporting segments and other operating results not allocated to the reported segments for the years ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011:

	<b>Years Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
<b>Sales:</b>			
Oil and gas proppants	\$ 347,439	\$ 243,765	\$ 107,074
Industrial and specialty products	198,546	198,156	188,522
 Total sales	 545,985	 441,921	 295,596
<b>Segment contribution margin:</b>			
Oil and gas proppants	145,916	140,070	67,590
Industrial and specialty products	56,983	53,601	53,013
 Total segment contribution margin	 202,899	 193,671	 120,603
Operating activities excluded from segment cost of goods sold	(5,481)	(8,285)	(6,203)
Selling, general and administrative	(49,759)	(41,299)	(23,348)
Advisory fees to parent			(9,250)
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	(36,418)	(25,099)	(20,999)
Interest expense	(15,341)	(13,795)	(18,407)
Early extinguishment of debt	(480)		(6,043)
Other income, net, including interest income	597	4,612	1,062
 Income (loss) before income taxes	 \$ 96,017	 \$ 109,805	 \$ 37,415

Asset information, including capital expenditures and depreciation, depletion, and amortization, by segment is not included in reports used by management in its monitoring of performance and, therefore, is not reported by segment. Goodwill of \$68.4 million has been allocated to these segments with \$47.7 million assigned to Oil & Gas Proppants and \$20.7 million to Industrial & Specialty Products. No customer exceeded 10% or more of net sales in any of the periods presented.



**Table of Contents****U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.****NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)

**NOTE V UNAUDITED SUPPLEMENTARY DATA**

The following table sets forth our unaudited quarterly consolidated statements of operations for each of the last four quarters ended December 31, 2013 and 2012. This unaudited quarterly information has been prepared on the same basis as our annual audited financial statements and includes all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments that are necessary to present fairly the financial information for the fiscal quarters presented.

	<b>First Quarter</b>	<b>Second Quarter</b>	<b>Third Quarter</b>	<b>Fourth Quarter</b>
<b>2013:</b>				
Sales	\$ 122,311	\$ 129,828	\$ 144,372	\$ 149,474
Costs of goods sold	74,412	80,297	90,983	102,875
Operating expenses				
Selling, general and administrative	12,404	10,099	12,800	14,456
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	8,278	8,890	9,152	10,098
	20,682	18,989	21,952	24,554
Operating income	27,217	30,542	31,437	22,045
Other (expense) income				
Interest expense	(3,576)	(3,535)	(4,144)	(4,086)
Early extinguishment of debt			(480)	
Other income, net, including interest income	122	63	260	152
	(3,454)	(3,472)	(4,364)	(3,934)
Income before income taxes	23,763	27,070	27,073	18,111
Income tax expense	(6,486)	(6,878)	(5,739)	(1,658)
Net income	\$ 17,277	\$ 20,192	\$ 21,334	\$ 16,453
Earnings per share, basic	\$ 0.33	\$ 0.38	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.31
Earnings per share, diluted	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.38	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.31
Weighted average common shares outstanding (in thousands), basic	52,946	52,948	53,103	53,035
Weighted average common shares outstanding (in thousands), diluted	52,211	53,227	53,429	53,409
	<b>First Quarter</b>	<b>Second Quarter</b>	<b>Third Quarter</b>	<b>Fourth Quarter</b>
<b>2012:</b>				
Sales	\$ 102,591	\$ 104,599	\$ 115,885	\$ 118,846
Costs of goods sold	56,921	58,920	69,706	70,988
Operating expenses				
Selling, general and administrative	9,904	9,718	10,135	11,542
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	5,978	5,974	5,968	7,179

Edgar Filing: U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC. - Form 10-K

	15,882	15,692	16,103	18,721
Operating income	29,788	29,987	30,076	29,137
Other (expense) income				
Interest expense	(3,797)	(3,428)	(3,326)	(3,244)
Other income, net, including interest income	154	179	348	3,931
	(3,643)	(3,249)	(2,978)	687
Income before income taxes	26,145	26,738	27,098	29,824
Income tax (expense) benefit	(7,032)	(7,287)	(8,302)	(8,030)
Net income	\$ 19,113	\$ 19,451	\$ 18,796	\$ 21,794
Earnings per share, basis and diluted	\$ 0.37	\$ 0.37	\$ 0.36	\$ 0.41
Weighted average common shares outstanding (in thousands), basic	51,939	52,440	52,873	52,891
Weighted average common shares outstanding (in thousands), diluted	52,031	52,505	52,887	52,963

**Table of Contents**

**U.S. SILICA HOLDINGS, INC.**

**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(dollars in thousands, except per share amounts)**

**NOTE W SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

On January 3, 2014, we paid a cash dividend of \$0.125 per share to common stockholders of record on December 16, 2013, as had been declared by our Board of Directors on October 24, 2013.

On January 29, 2014, Travelers Casualty and Surety Company of America released a letter of credit it previously held as collateral for surety bonds in the amount of \$4.4 million. A corresponding amount of liquidity, therefore, became available under the Revolver as of that date.

On February 6, 2014, our Board of Directors declared a quarterly cash dividend of \$0.125 per share to common stockholders of record at the close of business on March 14, 2014, payable on April 1, 2014.

---

**Table of Contents**

**ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE**

None.

**ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES**  
**Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

Our management, with the participation of our chief executive officer and chief financial officer, evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of December 31, 2013. The term "disclosure controls and procedures," as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act, means controls and other procedures of a company that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by a company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by a company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the company's management, including its principal executive and principal financial officers, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. Based on the evaluation of our disclosure controls and procedures as of December 31, 2013, our chief executive officer and chief financial officer concluded that, as of such date, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective at the reasonable assurance level.

Management recognizes that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable, and not absolute, assurance of achieving their objectives and management necessarily applies its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures.

**Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

Our management, under the direction of our chief executive officer and chief financial officer, is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(f).

Our system of internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance to our management and Board of Directors regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America.

Our management conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting using the framework in 1992 *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). As noted in the COSO framework, an internal control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance to management and the Board of Directors regarding achievement of an entity's financial reporting objectives. Based upon the evaluation under this framework, management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2013.

Our independent registered public accounting firm has audited the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2013, as stated in their report below.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### **Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting identified in management's evaluation pursuant to Rules 13a-15(d) or 15d-15(d) of the Exchange Act during the quarter ended December 31, 2013 that materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

### **REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

Board of Directors and Shareholders

U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.

We have audited the internal control over financial reporting of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. a Delaware corporation and subsidiaries (the Company) as of December 31, 2013, based on criteria established in the 1992 *Internal Control Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2013, based on criteria established in the 1992 *Internal Control Integrated Framework* issued by COSO.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the consolidated financial statements of the Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 2013, and our report dated February 26, 2014 expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

Baltimore, Maryland

February 26, 2014

**Table of Contents**

**ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION**

Not applicable.



**Table of Contents**

**PART III**

**ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE**

The information required by this item with respect to directors and corporate governance will be set forth under Proposal No. 1: Election of Directors in the 2014 Proxy Statement and incorporated herein by reference.

The information required by this item with respect to executive officers of U.S. Silica, pursuant to instruction 3 of paragraph (b) of Item 401 of Regulation S-K, is set forth following Part I, Item 1 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K under Executive Officers of the Registrant .

**ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION**

The information required by this item will be set forth under Executive and Director Compensation and Report of Compensation and Governance Committee in the 2014 Proxy Statement and incorporated herein by reference.

**ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS**

The information required by Item 403 of Regulation S-K regarding security ownership of certain beneficial owners and management will be set forth under Stock Ownership in the 2014 Proxy Statement and incorporated herein by reference.

The information required by Item 201(d) of Regulation S-K regarding securities authorized for issuance under equity compensation plans is furnished as a separate item captioned Securities Authorized for Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans included in Part II, Item 5 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

**ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE**

The information required by this item will be set forth under Transactions with Related Persons and Determination of Independence in the 2014 Proxy Statement and incorporated herein by reference.

**ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES**

The information required by this item will be set forth under Ratification of Grant Thornton LLP as Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for 2014 in the 2014 Proxy Statement and incorporated herein by reference.

**Table of Contents**

**PART IV**

**ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES**

The following documents are filed as a part of this report:

*a) Consolidated Financial Statements*

The Consolidated Financial Statements, together with the report thereon of Grant Thornton LLP, dated February 26, 2014, are included as part of Item 8, Financial Statements and Supplementary Data.

	<b>Page</b>
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	82
Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2013 and 2012	83
Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011	84
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011	85
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011	86
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011	87
Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements	88

*b) Consolidated Financial Statement Schedule*

All financial statement schedules are omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the Consolidated Financial Statements or the notes thereto and included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

*c) Exhibits required to be filed by Item 601 of Regulation S-K*

The information called for by this Item is incorporated herein by reference from the Exhibit Index included in this Annual Report.

**Table of Contents****SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this Report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, this 26th day of February, 2014.

U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.

/s/ BRYAN A. SHINN

Name: Bryan A. Shinn

Title: Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this Report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the Registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Capacity</b>	<b>Date</b>
/s/ BRYAN A. SHINN	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director	February 26, 2014
Bryan A. Shinn	(Principal Executive Officer)	
/s/ DONALD A. MERRIL	Vice President, Chief Financial Officer	February 26, 2014
Donald A. Merrill	(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	
/s/ CHARLES SHAVER	Chairman of the Board	February 26, 2014
Charles Shaver		
/s/ PETER BERNARD	Director	February 26, 2014
Peter Bernard		
/s/ WILLIAM J. KACAL	Director	February 26, 2014
William J. Kacal		
/s/ J. MICHAEL STICE	Director	February 26, 2014
J. Michael Stice		

**Table of Contents**

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

		<b>Incorporated by Reference</b>			
<b>Exhibit</b>					
<b>Number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Form</b>	<b>File No.</b>	<b>Exhibit</b>	<b>Filing Date</b>
3.1	Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc., effective January 31, 2012.	8-K	001-35416	3.1	February 6, 2012
3.2	Second Amended and Restated Bylaws of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc., effective January 31, 2012.	8-K	001-35416	3.2	February 6, 2012
4.1	Specimen Common Stock Certificate.	S-1/A	333-175636	4.1	December 7, 2011
10.1	Amendment No. 3 to Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of July 23, 2013, by and among USS Holdings, Inc. as Parent, U.S. Silica Company as Company, the Subsidiary Guarantors listed therein as Subsidiary Guarantors, the Lenders listed therein as Lenders and BNP Paribas as Administrative Agent.	8-K	001-35416	10.1	July 29, 2013
10.2+	Employment Agreement, dated as of March 22, 2012, by and between U.S. Silica Company and Bryan A. Shinn.	8-K	001-35416	10.11	March 22, 2012
10.3+	Employment Agreement, dated as of June 1, 2011, by and between U.S. Silica Company and Brian Slobodow.	S-1	333-175636	10.13	July 18, 2011
10.4+	Separation and Transition Agreement, dated October 1, 2012, by and among U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc., U.S. Silica Company and Brian Slobodow.	8-K	001-35416	10.2	October 1, 2012
10.5*+	Separation, Option Extension and Post-Separation Covenant Agreement, dated December 20, 2013, by and among U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc., U.S. Silica Company and Brian Slobodow.				
10.6+	2011 Incentive Compensation Plan.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.14	August 29, 2011
10.7+	Form of Incentive Stock Option Agreement.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.15	August 29, 2011
10.8+	Form of Restricted Stock Agreement.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.16	August 29, 2011
10.9+	Form of Nonqualified Stock Option Agreement.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.17	August 29, 2011
10.10+	Form of Stock Appreciation Rights Agreement.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.18	August 29, 2011
10.11+	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.19	August 29, 2011
10.12*+	Form of Performance Share Unit Agreement.				
10.13	Form of Indemnification Agreement	S-1/A	333-175636	10.20	December 29, 2011
10.14	Form of Letter Agreement by and among Golden Gate Private Equity, Inc. and U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.21	December 29, 2011

## Table of Contents

10.15+	Letter Agreement, dated as of December 27, 2011, by and between William J. Kacal and U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.	S-1/A	333-175636	10.24	December 29, 2011
10.16+	Letter Agreement, dated April 27, 2012, by and between Peter Bernard and U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.	8-K	001-35416	10.1	May 1, 2012
10.17+	Letter Agreement, dated October 8, 2013, by and between J. Michael Stice and U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.	8-K	001-35416	10.1	October 11, 2013
21.1*	List of subsidiaries of U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc.				
23.1*	Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.				
31.1 *	Rule 13a-14(a)/15(d)-14(a) Certification by Bryan A. Shinn, Chief Executive Officer.				
31.2*	Rule 13a-14(a)/15(d)-14(a) Certification by Donald A. Merrill, Chief Financial Officer.				
32.1*	Section 1350 Certification by Bryan A. Shinn, Chief Executive Officer.				
32.2*	Section 1350 Certification by Donald A. Merrill, Chief Financial Officer.				
95.1*	Mine Safety Disclosure				
99.1*	Consent of The Freedonia Group, Inc.				
101*	101.INS XBRL Instance				
	101.SCH XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema				
	101.CAL XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation				
	101.LAB XBRL Taxonomy Extension Labels				
	101.PRE XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation				
	101.DEF XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition				

+ Management contract or compensatory plan/arrangement

\* Filed herewith

We will furnish any of our shareowners a copy of any of the above Exhibits not included herein upon the written request of such shareowner and the payment to U.S. Silica Holdings, Inc. of the reasonable expenses incurred in furnishing such copy or copies.